

ИННОВАЦИОННАЯ  
ШКОЛА

Ю.А. КОМАРОВА  
И.В. ЛАРИОНОВА  
К. МАКБЕТ

# АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

6

класс



РУССКОЕ  
СЛОВО®



MACMILLAN

ИННОВАЦИОННАЯ ШКОЛА

Ю. А. Комарова  
И. В. Ларионова  
К. Макбет

# АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

Учебник для 6 класса  
общеобразовательных учреждений

*3-е издание*

Рекомендовано  
Министерством образования и науки  
Российской Федерации

*Экспертное заключение № 10106-5215/257 от 12.10.2011 г. (научная экспертиза)*

*Экспертное заключение № 001442 от 25.01.2014 г. (педагогическая экспертиза)*

*Экспертное заключение № 746 от 10.02.2014 г. (общественная экспертиза)*

Учебник соответствует  
Федеральному государственному  
образовательному стандарту

Москва  
«Русское слово»

  
MACMILLAN

2014

# Student's Book contents

Starter unit	page 6
<b>1</b> Unit 1 Let's Communicate!	page 9
<b>2</b> Unit 2 Meet the Family	page 21
<b>3</b> Unit 3 Free Time	page 33
<b>REVISION 1</b>	page 45
<b>4</b> Unit 4 Learning for Life	page 49
<b>5</b> Unit 5 Wonderful Wildlife	page 61
<b>6</b> Unit 6 Days Out	page 73
<b>REVISION 2</b>	page 85
<b>7</b> Unit 7 Look into the Past	page 89
<b>8</b> Unit 8 Team Spirit	page 101
<b>9</b> Unit 9 It's Summer!	page 113
<b>REVISION 3</b>	page 125
 Across the curriculum	page 129
Dictionary	page 148
Irregular verbs	page 160

Unit	Vocabulary	Grammar	Reading & Listening
<b>Starter</b> Page 6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Classroom objects</li> <li>◆ Colours</li> <li>◆ Times, days, dates</li> </ul>		
<b>1 Let's Communicate!</b> Page 9	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Languages, countries and nationalities</li> <li>◆ Adjectives</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ <i>be</i>: affirmative and negative, questions and short answers</li> <li>◆ Possessive adjectives and subject pronouns, possessive 's</li> <li>◆ Question words</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ R: World Languages</li> <li>◆ L: Learning languages</li> </ul>
<b>2 Meet the Family</b> Page 21	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Family</li> <li>◆ Describing people</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ <i>have got</i>: affirmative and negative, questions and short answers</li> <li>◆ <i>How many ...?</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ R: The Boehmer Family Jugglers</li> <li>◆ L: Describing the family</li> </ul>
<b>3 Free Time</b> Page 33	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Free time activities</li> <li>◆ Daily routines</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Present simple: affirmative and negative, questions and short answers</li> <li>◆ Word order</li> <li>◆ Time expressions: <i>at, on, in</i></li> <li>◆ Adverbs of frequency</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ R: Turn Your Free Time into Cash!</li> <li>◆ L: The weekend</li> </ul>

**REVISION 1** Page 45 **Review your progress**

<b>4 Learning for Life</b> Page 49	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ School subjects</li> <li>◆ Skills and abilities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ <i>love, hate, (don't) like + -ing</i></li> <li>◆ Object pronouns</li> <li>◆ Review of question forms: word order</li> <li>◆ <i>Why ...? / Because ...</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ R: Send my friend to school</li> <li>◆ L: A radio interview with a blind athlete</li> </ul>
<b>5 Wonderful Wildlife</b> Page 61	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Endangered animals</li> <li>◆ Adverbs of manner</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Present continuous: affirmative and negative, questions and short answers</li> <li>◆ Present simple and continuous</li> <li>◆ Time expressions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ R: The World Wide Fund for Nature</li> <li>◆ L: A talk about animals</li> </ul>
<b>6 Days Out</b> Page 73	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Places to visit</li> <li>◆ Food and drink</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ <i>there is / there are</i>: affirmative and negative, questions and short answers</li> <li>◆ Prepositions of place</li> <li>◆ Countable and uncountable nouns</li> <li>◆ <i>a / an, some and any</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ R: Welcome to London!</li> <li>◆ L: Conversations in shops and restaurants</li> </ul>

**REVISION 2** Page 85 **Review your progress**

<b>7 Look into the Past</b> Page 89	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ History makers</li> <li>◆ Irregular verbs</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Past simple: affirmative, regular and irregular verbs</li> <li>◆ <i>there was / there were</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ R: Wonders of the Ancient World</li> <li>◆ L: An audio guide from the Titanic Museum</li> </ul>
<b>8 Team Spirit</b> Page 101	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Olympic sports</li> <li>◆ Clothes and accessories</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Past simple: negative, questions and short answers</li> <li>◆ Past time expressions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ R: The Olympic Games</li> <li>◆ L: A tour of Wembley Stadium</li> </ul>
<b>9 It's Summer!</b> Page 113	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ The weather and seasons</li> <li>◆ Landscape features</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ <i>be going to</i></li> <li>◆ Future time expressions</li> <li>◆ <i>How...?</i> questions</li> <li>◆ <i>must / mustn't</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ R: Camp Active web page</li> <li>◆ L: Holiday plans</li> </ul>

**REVISION 3** Page 125 **Review your progress**

4

Culture	Speaking & Pronunciation	Writing	Dialogue builder	Across the curriculum
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Greetings and introductions</li> <li>◆ The alphabet and spelling</li> <li>◆ English in the classroom</li> </ul>			
 <b>Britain</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Multilingual Britain</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Exchanging personal information</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ A personal profile</li> <li>◆ Capital letters</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Giving personal information <i>What's your name?</i> <i>What's your email address?</i></li> </ul>	 <b>Language</b> Page 130
 <b>The USA</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ The Red Earth Festival</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Talking about your family</li> <li>◆ Silent / pronounced [h]</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ A description</li> <li>◆ Apostrophes</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Talking about shopping <i>Can I help you?</i> <i>Have you got ...?</i></li> </ul>	 <b>Art</b> Page 132
 <b>Ireland</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Ireland's Young Musicians</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Talking about your daily routine</li> <li>◆ [s] [z] [ɪz]</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ An email</li> <li>◆ <i>and, but</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Giving instructions <i>Can you give me a hand?</i> <i>Don't forget to ...</i></li> </ul>	 <b>ICT</b> Page 134
 <b>Scotland</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Going to School on a Scottish Island</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Talking about likes and dislikes</li> <li>◆ <i>can / can't</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ A questionnaire</li> <li>◆ <i>so</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Making suggestions <i>Let's ...</i> <i>How about ...?</i></li> </ul>	 <b>Maths</b> Page 136
 <b>Australia</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Australia's Weird and Wonderful Wildlife</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Describing an animal</li> <li>◆ verb + <i>-ing</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ A web project</li> <li>◆ Using adjectives</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Making arrangements <i>What are you doing tomorrow?</i> <i>What time are you going?</i></li> </ul>	 <b>Science</b> Page 138
 <b>England</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ A Day Out at the Summer Show</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Placing locations on a map</li> <li>◆ Syllable stress</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ A guide for tourists</li> <li>◆ <i>also</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Ordering food <i>Can I have ...?</i> <i>How much is a ...?</i></li> </ul>	 <b>Geography</b> Page 140
 <b>Wales</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Castles and Dragons</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Talking about an excursion</li> <li>◆ [t] [d] [ɪd]</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ A biography</li> <li>◆ Time connectors</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Asking for information <i>Where's the ...?</i> <i>Is there a ...?</i></li> </ul>	 <b>History</b> Page 142
 <b>New Zealand</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Sports Mad in New Zealand!</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Talking about sports</li> <li>◆ Sentence stress</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ A class survey</li> <li>◆ Question forms</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Talking about past events <i>Did you have a good weekend?</i> <i>What did you do?</i></li> </ul>	 <b>PE</b> Page 144
 <b>Canada</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Welcome to Canada!</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Talking about holiday plans</li> <li>◆ <i>must / mustn't</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ A letter</li> <li>◆ Prepositions of place and time</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Expressing quantity <i>How much does it cost to send a letter to ...?</i> <i>Is there a postbox near here?</i></li> </ul>	 <b>Geography</b> Page 146

# Starter unit



Hello! I'm Emma  
and these are  
my friends.



Hi! I'm Jack  
and this is  
my guitar.



Hello. My name's  
Megan. What's your  
name?

## Recycle Greetings

- 1 **02** Read and listen. What are the people's names?
- 2 Ask and answer with your classmates.
  - Hello! What's your name?
  - My name's Sergey.

## Recycle Introductions

- 3 Look at the box. Which pronouns are singular and which are plural?

Demonstrative pronouns

this that these those

**This** is my dog.

**These** are my friends.

**Look!**

- 4 Introduce your partner to the class.
  - This is Sergey. He's my classmate.



This is my classroom,  
and that's my English  
teacher, Mrs Burton.  
She's nice.

### Recycle Classroom objects

5 Match objects 1–10 in the picture with these words. What are they in your language?

board chair book desk notebook  
bag pencil pen computer map

6 Is your classroom similar or different? What other things are in your classroom?

### Recycle Colours

7 What colour are objects 1–10? Write sentences.

red blue yellow green brown black  
grey orange pink purple white

The board is white.

8 What colour are these things in your classroom?

## Recycle Times

9 Put these times in order. Start with one o'clock.

- nine o'clock
- twenty to five
- one o'clock
- a quarter past three
- ten past two
- a quarter to six
- ten to seven
- half past four
- five to eight

10 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.



- What time is it?
- It's ...

## Recycle Days and dates

SEPTEMBER						
SUNDAY	MONDAY	TUESDAY	WEDNESDAY	THURSDAY	FRIDAY	SATURDAY
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30				

11 Look at the calendar. What day of the week are these dates?

first eleventh twenty-second third  
fourteenth twenty-fifth sixth seventeenth

12 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- When's your birthday?
- It's on ...

## Recycle The alphabet and spelling

13 Listen and repeat.

a b c d e f g h  
i j k l m n o p q  
r s t u v w x y z

14 Listen to the two dialogues. Write the names.

## Recycle English in the classroom



15 Read and listen. What object is it?



- A What's this in English?
- B It's a pencil sharpener.
- A Sorry, can you repeat that?
- B Yes, it's a pencil sharpener.
- A Can you spell that, please?
- B Yes. It's P-E-N-C-I-L S-H-A-R-P-E-N-E-R.
- A Thanks!

16 Work in pairs. Ask and answer about the objects on page 7.

- What's this in English?
- It's a ...

# Let's Communicate!

1

## Unit contents:

**Vocabulary** Languages, countries and nationalities; adjectives and opposites

**Grammar** *be*; possessive adjectives; possessive 's'; question words

**Skills** Read about world languages  
Listen to people talking about learning languages  
Write a personal profile  
Give personal information

**Across the curriculum** Language

**Culture** Multilingual Britain



4

Μεταξουργείο  
taxourghio



5

glass

used engine oil

batteries

paint

textiles



Ac eithro  
beic gan  
feic  
Except  
bicycles  
by bicycles



2

PUNTO DI  
RACCOLTA



3

HOTEL ROUTE 2  
Casino

Pension  
Ziehrer Haus

J. Museum

am  
Baden

irtschaft  
ER

## Language quiz

1 Match the signs above with these languages.

- Chinese
- Welsh
- German
- Greek
- English
- Italian

2 Can you say 'Hello' in any of these languages?



In my class, people speak six different languages. How many languages are there in your class?

# Vocabulary 1

 **Recycle** Are these expressions for saying Hello or Goodbye?

Hil See you! Good morning. Goodnight. Bye!

## Languages, countries and nationalities

1 Match the flags with the countries. Which three flags aren't in the picture?



Russia Spain Scotland France Canada  
Australia Ireland Britain Poland Wales  
The USA Mexico China England Argentina

2 Match all the countries in exercise 1 with these nationalities.

Canadian Spanish Australian British French  
Scottish Argentinian Welsh Russian Polish  
Chinese American Irish Mexican English

3 Match the countries with these languages.

Chinese French Welsh English Russian  
Polish Gaelic Spanish

4  Listen and repeat.

5  Your voice Where are you from? Tell your classmates.

*I'm from Vladimir.*

6 Listen to your classmates and write sentences.

*Igor is from Vladimir.*

*Katia is from Ufa.*

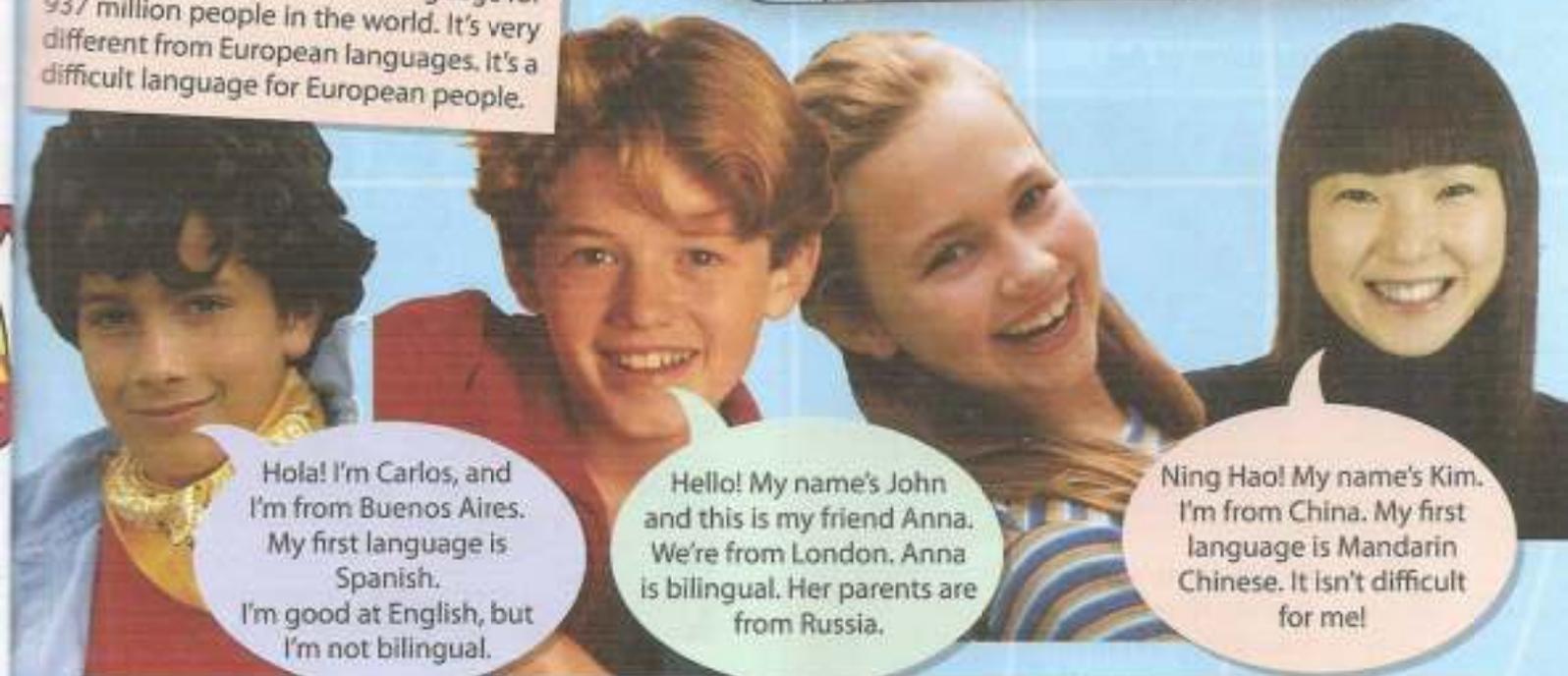
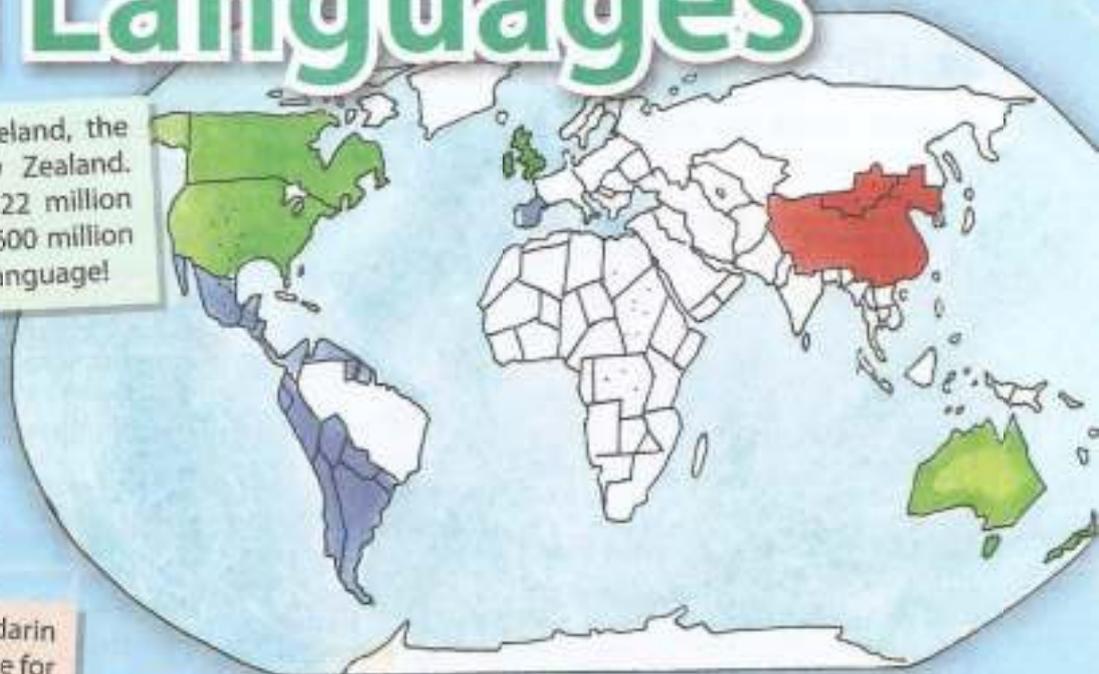
 Vocabulary plus → Workbook p116

# World Languages

People speak English in Britain, Ireland, the USA, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. English is the first language for 322 million people. It's a second language for 600 million people. English is an international language!

About 332 million people speak Spanish in Spain and some Latin American countries. It isn't the first language for Brazilians. Their language is Portuguese.

In China many people speak Mandarin Chinese. Chinese is the first language for 937 million people in the world. It's very different from European languages. It's a difficult language for European people.



Hola! I'm Carlos, and I'm from Buenos Aires. My first language is Spanish. I'm good at English, but I'm not bilingual.

Hello! My name's John and this is my friend Anna. We're from London. Anna is bilingual. Her parents are from Russia.

Ning Hao! My name's Kim. I'm from China. My first language is Mandarin Chinese. It isn't difficult for me!

## 1 07 Read and listen.

Complete the sentences with numbers.

- 1 Chinese is the first language for ... people.
- 2 ... people speak Spanish.
- 3 English is the first language for ... people.

## 2 Find these words in the text. Are they similar in your language?

different difficult international bilingual

## 3 Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 Chinese and English are very different languages.
- 2 Spanish is the first language in Brazil.
- 3 English is a second language for 600 million people.
- 4 Carlos is bilingual.
- 5 Anna and John are from Russia.
- 6 Kim is Japanese.



# Grammar 1

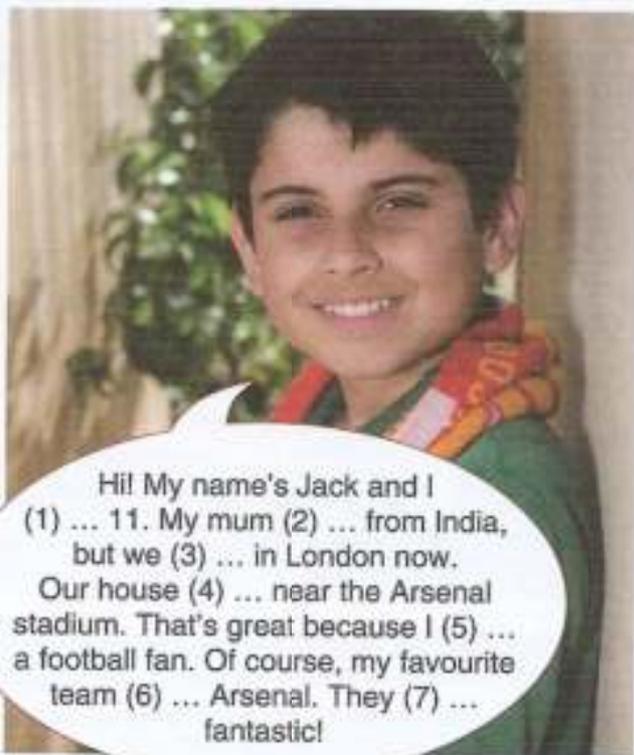
## be: affirmative and negative

- 1 Match these full forms with the bold words in the table.

is am are am not are not is not

affirmative		negative	
I'm	from Russia. Russian. bilingual. Polish.	I'm not	from China. English. bilingual. American.
You're		You aren't	
He's		He isn't	
She's		She isn't	
It's		It isn't	
We're	We aren't	You aren't	
You're		You aren't	
They're		They aren't	

- 2 Complete the text with the correct affirmative form of *be*.



- 3 Correct the sentences. Use the negative and affirmative form of *be*.

Jack is 12.

Jack isn't 12. He's 11.

- 1 His mum is from the USA.
- 2 Jack is in Manchester now.
- 3 Jack is a rugby fan.
- 4 His favourite team is Chelsea.
- 5 Arsenal are terrible.

## Possessive adjectives

- 4 Look at the possessive adjectives. What are they in your language?

subject pronouns

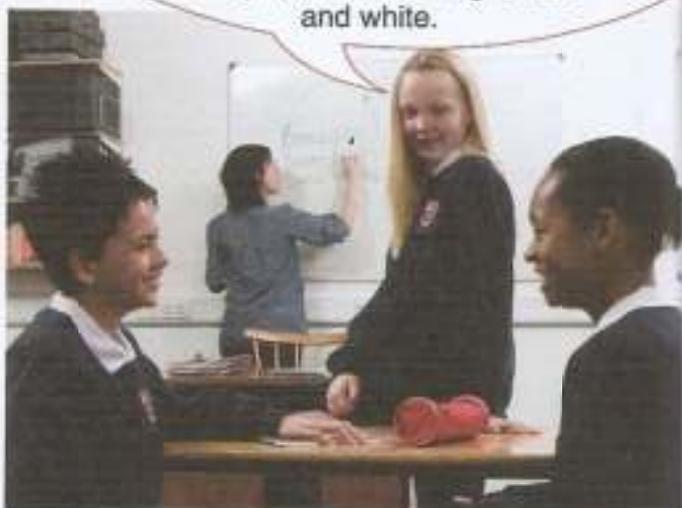
I you he she it we you they

my your his her its our your their

possessive adjectives

- 5 Choose the correct words.

Hello! I'm Emma, and these are (1) **my / her** classmates. (2) **His / Their** names are Roberto and Nyasha. We're in a Spanish class now. Roberto is good at Spanish – (3) **her / his** father is from Mexico! That's (4) **our / your** Spanish teacher. (5) **His / Her** name's Maite and she's from Buenos Aires. Argentina is a very big country. (6) **Its / His** flag is blue and white.



### Possessive 's

We use 's after a name or singular noun.

Roberto and Nyasha are Emma's classmates.

We use ' after a plural word.

Her classmates' names are Roberto and Nyasha.

- 6 Your voice Add 's or s' to the bold words. Then complete the sentences for you.

- 1 My **teacher** name is ...
- 2 My **friend** names are ...
- 3 My **country** flag is ...
- 4 My **parent** names are ...



Language guide p18

## Vocabulary 2

### Adjectives

1 Match the pictures with these adjectives.

small difficult old happy boring  
horrible far wrong



2 Write pairs of opposites. Use the adjectives in exercise 1 and these words.

easy sad big new near nice  
right interesting

small - big

3 Listen, check and repeat.

4 Your voice Complete the sentences for you. Use adjectives.

- I think English is ...
- My school is ...
- My house is ...
- These books are ...
- Our teacher is ...
- This exercise is ...

### Listening

5 Listen to John, Anna, Kim and Carlos talking about learning languages. Match the pictures with the correct person.



6 Listen again and choose the correct words.

- John's teacher **is** / **isn't** from France.
- John's class on Thursdays is **interesting** / **boring**.
- Anna's **parents** / **friends** are from Russia.
- Speaking Russian is **easy** / **difficult** for Anna.
- Kim's calligraphy class is **big** / **small**.
- Kim **is** / **isn't** happy in Spain.
- Carlos's English teacher **is** / **isn't** nice.
- Carlos's friends' house is near **Washington** / **New York**.



Britain = England, Wales and Scotland  
Languages: English, Welsh and Gaelic

# Multilingual Britain

## Se oileanach a th'annam

- 1 This says 'I am a student' in Gaelic. Where is Gaelic from?
- Scotland
  - Wales

Cymraeg yw fy iaith gyntaf. Siaradaf Gymraeg bob dydd.

- 2 Look at these phrases. Are they in English?
- Yes, they are.
  - No, they aren't. They're Welsh.

Over 70% of the population in Llyn speaks Welsh. Why not join them!

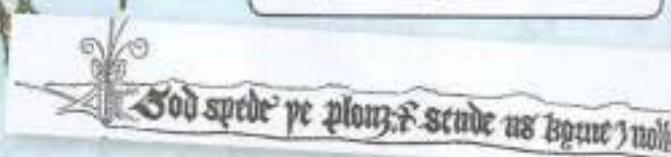
Call the Learn Welsh Hotline  
**0871 2300017**

Mae dros 70% o boblogaeth Pen-y-llyn yn siarad Cymraeg

- 3 600 000 people speak Welsh. Is it obligatory in schools in Wales?
- Yes, it is.
  - No, it isn't.



- 4 English is an Anglo-Saxon language. How old is it?
- 1500 years old
  - 15 000 years old



- 5 Scottish and Welsh people speak English with different accents. Are the accents different in the north and south of England too?
- Yes, they are.
  - No, they aren't.



Welcome to London

স্বাগতম  
লন্ডন  
আগমন

- 6 London is a multicultural city. What is the total number of languages in London?
- 30
  - 100
  - 300

1 Look at the map. What are the capital cities of England, Wales and Scotland?

2 Do the quiz. Then listen and check.

3 Your voice Answer the questions.

- What are the different languages in your country?
- Are the accents different in the north, south, east and west?

... learn more!



Britain → Workbook p 22

## Grammar 2

### be: questions and short answers

1 Look at the table. Which is the correct form for questions, a or b?

a verb be   subject   other words   ?

b subject   verb be   other words   ?

questions	short answers
Am I in Wales?	Yes, you are. / No, you aren't.
Are you Welsh?	Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
Is he Scottish?	Yes, he / she / it is.
Is she Welsh?	No, he / she / it isn't.
Is it in Gaelic?	
Are we in London?	Yes, we / you / they are.
Are you from Cardiff?	No, we / you / they aren't.
Are they in Edinburgh?	

2 Write questions with **be**.

you / from the USA? *Are you from the USA?*

- Glasgow / the capital of Scotland?
- you / interested in football?
- Rihanna / from England?
- you / 13?
- your parents / Welsh?

3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 2.

- Are you from the USA?
- No, I'm not.

### Question words

4 Translate the question words into your language.

When ...? Where ...? What ...?  
Who ...? How ...?

**Look!**

How are you? → I'm fine, thanks.  
How old are you? → I'm 12.

5 Order the words to make questions.

- your / Who / classmates / are?
- is / Where / from / Gaelic?
- is / What / your / name / teacher's?
- are / When / English / your / classes?
- your / is / How / family?

6 Complete the questionnaire with question words.

1



### Questionnaire

1 What's your name?

*My name's Megan Jones.*

2 ... old are you?

*I'm 12 years old.*

3 ...'s your birthday?

*It's on 10th September.*

4 ... are your best friends?

*My best friends are Shania and Joanne.  
They're in my class at school.*

5 ... are you from?

*I'm from London, but my parents are from  
Scotland.*

6 ... are you interested in?

*I'm interested in music. My favourite bands are  
Scissor Sisters and The White Stripes.*

## Speaking

- Write a questionnaire like the one in exercise 6. Ask and answer in pairs.
- Complete the questionnaire with your partner's answers.



Language guide p18

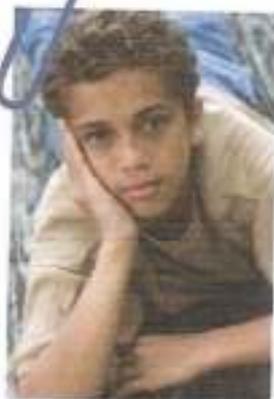
# Writing dossier

## A personal profile

Hello! My name's Pascal and I'm from (1) ... I'm (2) ... years old, and my birthday is on 2nd (3) ...

In my country, the official languages are French and English. My first language is (4) ..., and my second language is English.

I'm interested in sports and (5) ... My favourite bands are Foo Fighters and Metallica.



- 1 **11** Complete the personal profile with these words. Then listen and check.

October Canada music French 12

- 2 Look at the Language focus. Find examples for 3–6 in the personal profile.

### Language focus: capital letters

We use capital letters for ...

- 1 the beginning of a sentence Hello!
- 2 the subject pronoun 'I' I'm 12 years old.
- 3 names
- 4 countries and cities
- 5 months and days
- 6 languages and nationalities

- 3 Correct the sentences. Use capital letters.

i'm 12 years old. X

I'm 12 years old.

- 1 my name's david. X
- 2 i'm from london, in britain. X
- 3 my birthday is on 15th november. X
- 4 my first language is english. X
- 5 my favourite films are madagascar and star wars. X

### Writing plan

- ① Plan your personal profile. Use these ideas.

Name / age / nationality  
Birthday  
Languages of your country  
First / second language  
Interests  
Favourite bands

- ② Write a first version. Include this information.

✦ name / age / birthday  
✦ country / language  
✦ interests / favourite bands

- ③ Check your writing.

✓ Check days and dates on page 8.  
✓ Check countries, nationalities and languages on page 10.  
✓ Use the verb *be* correctly.  
✓ Use capital letters correctly.

- ④ Write the final version and put it in your Dossier.

# Dialogue builder

## Giving personal information

- 1 12 Jack is joining a school club. Listen and complete the dialogue.



Teacher

Jack

Hello.  
 OK. What's your name?  
 Can you spell that, please?  
 Thanks. What's your address?  
 OK. How old are you?  
 And what's your phone number?  
 What's your email address?  
 Thanks! That's all. Here's your card.

Hello. Music club please.  
 My first name's Jack, and my surname's Procter.  
 Yes, it's P-R-O-C-T-E-R.  
 It's 43, Western Road, (1) ..., N6 1DP.  
 I'm (2) ...  
 It's (3) ...  
 It's jack.p@email.com.  
 Thanks!

**Join  
the music club**  
 Try new instruments,  
 discover your singing voice  
 and learn about music from  
 other countries  
 Every Friday at 3.30 pm  
 in the music room

- 2 12 Listen again and repeat. Practise your intonation.
- 3 Prepare a new dialogue for joining one of these clubs. Copy the school club registration form.

Swimming club



Every Tuesday  
2.00 pm at the  
swimming pool

Football club



Wednesday and  
Friday afternoons  
4.30 pm in the sports  
hall

### North London High School

#### School club registration form

First name \_\_\_\_\_  
 Surname \_\_\_\_\_  
 Age \_\_\_\_\_  
 Nationality \_\_\_\_\_  
 Address \_\_\_\_\_  
 Postcode \_\_\_\_\_  
 Phone number \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mobile number \_\_\_\_\_  
 Email address \_\_\_\_\_

### Useful expressions

What's your name? My name's ...  
 Can you spell that, please?  
 What's your address / phone number /  
 email address? It's ...  
 How old are you? I'm ... (years old).

- 4 Work in pairs. Practise the dialogue and complete the registration form with your partner's information.

- What's your name?
- My first name's Anna and my surname's ...

# Language Guide

## Vocabulary

### Other languages

Welsh    Gaelic    Arabic

### Countries, languages and nationalities

Britain



British

Spain



Spanish

France



French

Russia



Russian

The USA



American

Mexico



Mexican

Ireland



Irish

Poland



Polish

Canada



Canadian

Argentina



Argentinian

China



Chinese

Australia



Australian

### Adjectives

small / big



far / near



difficult / easy



boring / interesting



old / new



wrong / right



happy / sad



horrible / nice



### Dictionary extra!

accent (n) ★★

bilingual (adj)

city (n) ★★★

European (adj)

Brazilian (adj)

friend (n) ★★★

million (n) ★★

New Zealand (n)

parent (n) ★★★

people (n) ★★★

Portuguese (adj)

school (n) ★★★

South Africa (n)

student (n) ★★★

### Useful expressions

What's your name? My name's ...  
 Can you spell that, please?  
 What's your address / phone number /  
 email address? It's ...  
 How old are you? I'm ... (years old).

# Grammar

## Subject pronouns

singular	plural
I	we
you	you
he / she / it	they

- In English a subject or subject pronoun is always necessary.  
*David is French.* ✓ *He is French.* ✓  
*is-French.* X
- You is singular and plural.
- He is for a man / boy, she is for a woman / girl and it is for an object / animal.

## be: present simple

affirmative	
I'm (am) You're (are) He / She / It's (is) We're (are) You're (are) They're (are)	American. from Spain. 12.
negative	
I'm not (am not) You aren't (are not) He / She / It isn't (is not) We aren't (are not) You aren't (are not) They aren't (are not)	British. from England. 11.
questions	
Am I Are you Is he / she / it Are we / you / they	Russian? from Canada?
short answers	
Yes, I am. / No, I'm not. Yes, you are. / No, you aren't. Yes, he/she/it is. / No, he/she/it isn't. Yes, we/you/they are. / No, we/you/they aren't.	

- We use the verb *be* to describe a person's nationality, age, etc.
- We usually use short forms in conversation.
- The word order is different in affirmative sentences and questions.

They *are* Polish.    *Are* they Polish?

## Question words

<b>What's</b> your name?	My name's Maria.
<b>Where</b> are you from?	I'm from Russia.
<b>When's</b> your birthday?	It's in August.
<b>How</b> are you?	I'm fine.
<b>How old</b> are you?	I'm 12.
<b>Who's</b> she?	She's my teacher.

## Possessive adjectives and possessive 's

singular	plural
my	our
your	your
his/her/its	their

**His** name is Anton. **Her** name is Rita.

- We use *his* for boys / men and *her* for girls / women.
- *Your* is singular and plural.

*My teacher's* name is Ms Smith.  
*My friends'* names are Emma and Jack.

- We use *'s* after a singular noun / name.
- We use *s'* after a plural noun / names.



Grammar exercises → Workbook p99



## Progress check

### Languages, countries and nationalities

1 Match the countries and the flags. Then write the languages and nationalities.



The USA Spain Russia China Ireland France

### Adjectives

2 Find five pairs. Then translate the words into your language.

old sad new difficult interesting  
happy small boring easy big

### be

3 Complete the sentences with the affirmative or negative form of *be*. Write true sentences.

- I ... a student.
- Australia and New Zealand ... in Europe.
- Seville ... the capital of Spain.
- New York ... in the USA.
- I ... from Scotland.
- Polish people ... from Poland.

### Possessive adjectives and 's

4 Choose the correct words.

- Johnny Depp is from the USA. **His** / **Her** first language is English.
- My **mums'** / **mum's** birthday is in June.
- We study English. **Our** / **Their** teacher is called Ms Smith.
- My **cousins'** / **cousin's** names are Julie and Jill.
- Ireland is in Europe. **Its** / **It's** flag is green, white and orange.
- Shakira is from Colombia. **She** / **Her** first language is Spanish.

### be: questions and question words

5 Match 1–5 with a–e. Then answer the questions.

- |         |                             |
|---------|-----------------------------|
| 1 Where | a) old are you?             |
| 2 How   | b) is your favourite actor? |
| 3 When  | c) are you from?            |
| 4 What  | d) is your birthday?        |
| 5 Who   | e) is your teacher's name?  |

### Cumulative grammar 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

6 Complete the conversation with these words.

how 'm are who is what your  
it's isn't my very



- Boy** Hello! Where (1) ... you from?  
**Man** I (2) ... from California in the USA.  
**Boy** What's (3) ... first language?  
**Man** (4) ... first language is Miwok. (5) ... a Native American language.  
**Boy** (6) ... it very common?  
**Man** No, it (7) ... . Only three people speak Miwok now.  
**Boy** Really? (8) ... are they?  
**Man** Me, my father and my grandfather.  
**Boy** Your grandfather?! (9) ... old is he?  
**Man** Oh, he's (10) ... old now!  
**Boy** (11) ...'s 'goodbye' in Miwok?  
**Man** 'Eyya manay kanni'.  
**Boy** OK. Eyya manay kanni!  
**Man** Goodbye!

# Meet the Family

# 2

## Unit contents:

**Vocabulary** Family, describing people

**Grammar** *have got; How many ...?*

**Skills** Read about a circus family

Listen to Emma describing her cousins

Write a description

Talk about shopping

**Across the curriculum** Art

**Culture** The USA: The Red Earth Festival

## Family quiz

- 1 Twins are two brothers or sisters that have got the same date of birth. Find the twins in the picture.
- 2 What's the word for six brothers or sisters with the same date of birth?  
a) triplets    b) quadruplets    c) sextuplets
- 3 In which country can families only have one child?  
a) the USA    b) China    c) Russia
- 4 What's the average number of children in British families?  
a) 1.2    b) 1.8    c) 2.6

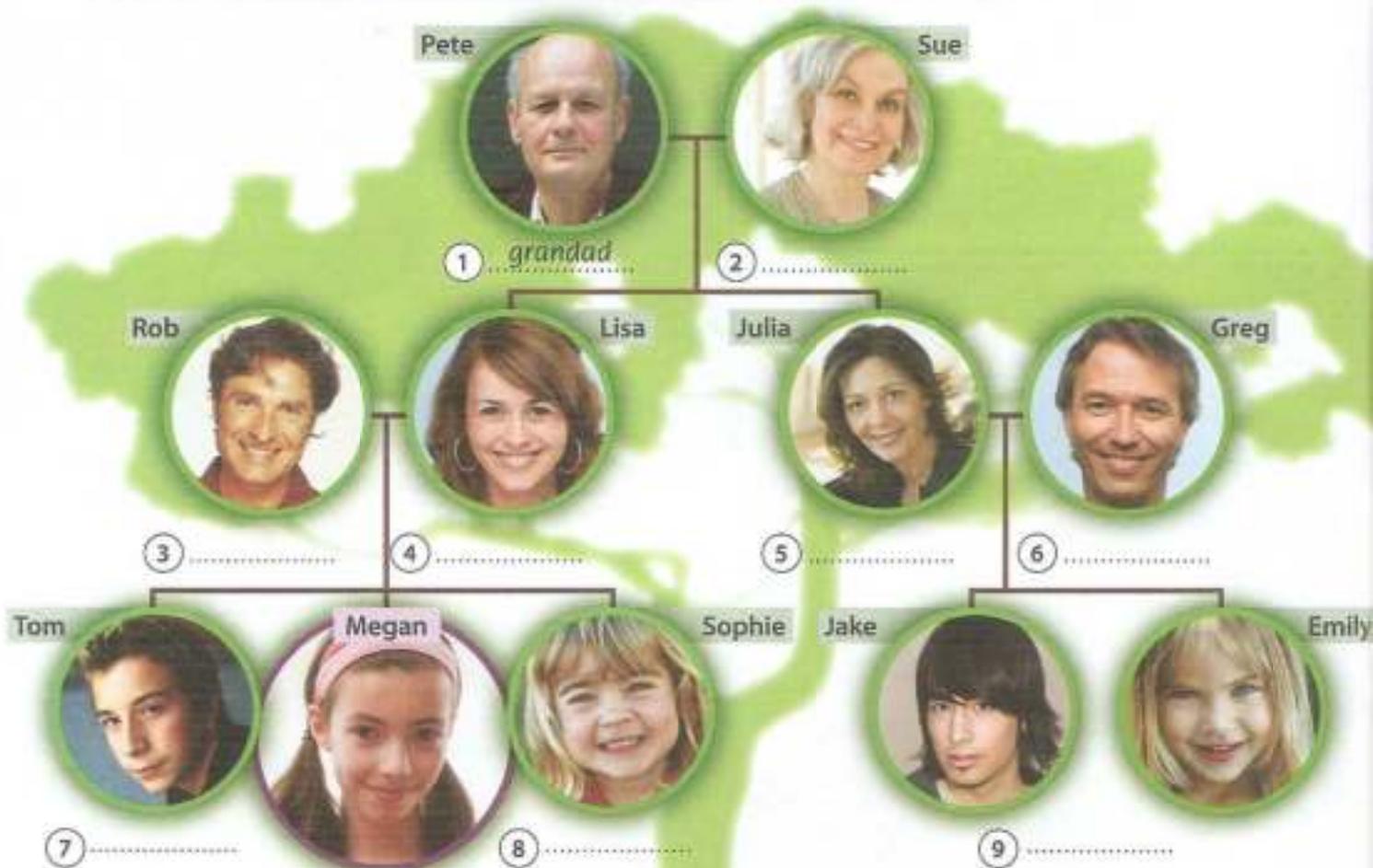


# Vocabulary 1

## Family

1 Copy and complete Megan's family tree.

grandma aunt mum dad uncle grandad sister cousin brother



2 Listen and repeat.

3 Copy and complete the table with the correct family words. Check the meaning of these words.

wife	(4) ...
(1) ...	son
granddaughter	(5) ...
(2) ...	stepdad
sister-in-law	(6) ...
(3) ...	nephew

mum + dad = parents  
 grandma + grandad = grandparents  
 son + daughter = children

**Look!**

**Recycle** Where do you find these parts of the body? Can you add more words?

eyes ears nose hair mouth teeth

4 Write sentences with the possessive 's.

- Rob / Megan  
 Rob is Megan's dad.  
 1 Pete / Megan  
 2 Julia / Tom  
 3 Tom / Sophie  
 4 Rob / Lisa  
 5 Julia / Greg

5 **Your voice** Write about the people in your family.

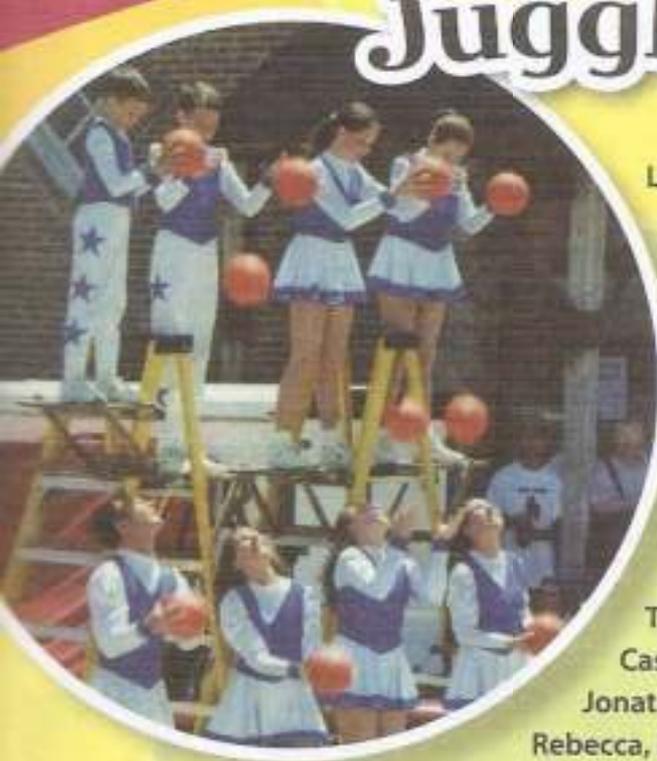
My mum's name is Alla.  
 My cousins' names are Inna and Sasha.

**Vocabulary plus** → Workbook p117

# The Boehmer Family

## Jugglers

2



Larry and Judy Boehmer have got 11 children, and they're all part of the Boehmer Family Jugglers. Their circus show is fantastic – it's got juggling, unicycles and gymnastics. It's at theme parks and festivals around the USA.

The Boehmers have got four sons and seven daughters. Their names are Adam, Casey, Holly, Sarah, Keri, Jonathan, Melissa, Austin, Rebecca, Elizabeth and Margaret.

Casey Boehmer is a fantastic juggler. He's got a gold medal from the International Juggling Association. It's amazing because Casey has only got one arm, but he can juggle five balls with one hand. The Boehmers have also got a dog called Bosco. Sometimes, Bosco is their assistant at the circus show!



1 **14** Read and listen.

Who can you see in the pictures?

2 Read the text again. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 The Boehmers have got 15 children.
- 2 The Boehmers' circus show has got juggling and gymnastics.
- 3 Larry and Judy have got seven sons.
- 4 Casey hasn't got two arms.
- 5 Casey has got a gold medal for juggling.
- 6 The Boehmers have got a cat called Bosco.

3 Find these words and check their meaning.

circus juggling unicycles theme park assistant

4 Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1 What is Larry's wife's name?
- 2 Where is the Boehmer family's circus show?
- 3 What has their circus show got?
- 4 Is Casey a good juggler?
- 5 How many balls can he juggle with one hand?
- 6 What is the name of the family's pet?



Across the curriculum

Art → p132

# Grammar 1

## have got: affirmative and negative

1 Look at the table. Which form is different?

affirmative		negative	
I You	've got a brother.	I You	haven't got a sister.
He She It	's got a gold medal.	He She It	hasn't got five brothers.
We You They	've got a dog.	We You They	haven't got a cat.

! 've got = have got 's got = has got

2 Look at the information about the members of the band McFly. Then complete the sentences.



	Harry	Tom	Dougie	Danny
family	1 brother, 1 sister	1 sister	1 sister	1 sister
pets	2 dogs, 1 cat, 4 chickens	1 dog, 1 cat	2 dogs, 2 cats, 1 hamster	2 dogs

Danny hasn't got a hamster.

- Harry, Tom, Dougie and Danny ... one sister.
- Harry ... a brother.
- Tom, Dougie and Danny ... a brother.
- Harry, Dougie and Danny ... two dogs.
- Danny ... a cat.
- Harry ... four chickens.
- All the boys ... pets.
- Dougie ... a hamster.

3 Write true sentences.

My teacher / a Porsche  
My teacher hasn't got a Porsche.

- I / a mobile phone
- My best friend / a sister
- We / house in the USA
- My classmates / English books
- My teacher / a CD player
- I / ten brothers and sisters

## Pronunciation: [h]

a 15 Listen and repeat.

have husband hair hamster horrible

b 16 Listen. Do you hear a) or b)?

- a) hear b) ear
- a) has b) as
- a) hand b) and
- a) his b) is

4 Complete the texts with the correct affirmative or negative form of *have got*.

I've got one sister and one brother. My sister's name is Helen. She's 17 and she (1) ... a boyfriend called Oliver. My brother's name is Paul. He's got a lot of friends, but he (2) ... a girlfriend. We (3) ... a house on Western Road in north London.



I (4) ... any brothers or sisters, but I've got three cousins. My aunt (5) ... a son and a daughter and my aunt and uncle in Australia (6) ... a daughter, Charlie. They (7) ... a fantastic house near the beach. Charlie (8) ... a dog, too. Its name is Max.

## Speaking

5 Write three true and three false sentences about your family. Use *has got* or *have got*.

I've got 20 cousins.

My sister has got a famous boyfriend.

6 Work in pairs. Listen to your partner's sentences. Are they true or false?

☞ I've got 20 cousins.

☞ False?

☞ No, it's true!



Language guide p30

# Vocabulary 2

## Describing people

1 Check the meaning of these words.

tall short slim attractive  
short / long hair fair / brown / red / dark hair  
blue / green / brown eyes  
glasses / sunglasses

Look!

Adjectives	
be + adjective	adjective + noun
Her hair is short.	She's got short hair.

2 Look at the pictures and choose the correct words.

### Friends gallery



Cathy



Paul



Emma and Jack

- 1 Cathy's got fair / dark hair.
- 2 Paul's got long / short hair.
- 3 Cathy's got blue / brown eyes.
- 4 Paul's got brown / blue eyes.
- 5 Emma's got long / short hair.
- 6 Jack's glasses / sunglasses are black.

3 **17** Listen, check and repeat.

4 Write two sentences with *be* and *have got*.

Paul / hair (brown)  
Paul's hair is brown.  
Paul's got brown hair.

- 1 Cathy / eyes (blue)
- 2 Emma / hair (fair)
- 3 Paul / eyes (brown)
- 4 Jack / hair (short)
- 5 Emma's / sunglasses (black)

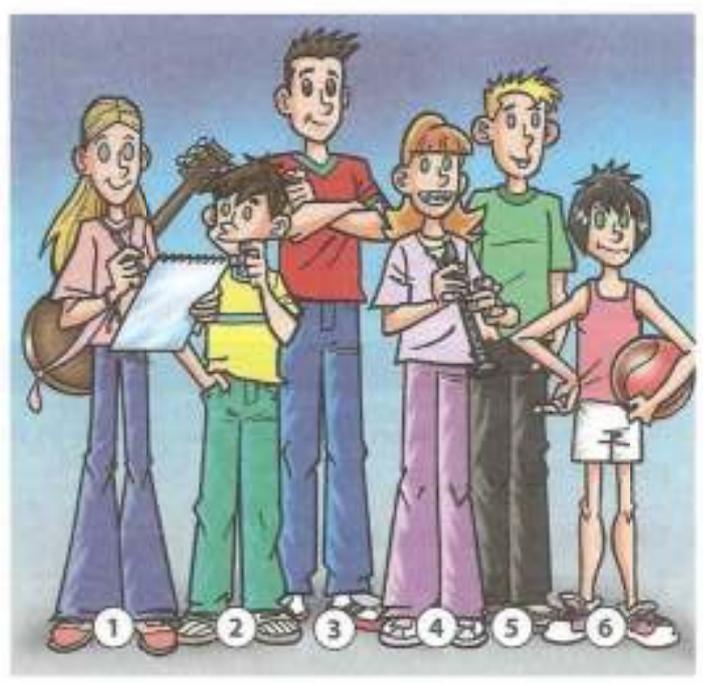
5 **Your voice** Write a description of the people in your family.

My mum is tall and slim. She's got red hair. Her eyes are green and she's got glasses.

My brother ...

## Listening

6 **18** Listen to Emma describing her three cousins. Which people are they?



7 **18** Listen again. Answer the questions.

- 1 Has Sam got green eyes?
- 2 Is Sam tall?
- 3 What colour are Chris's eyes?
- 4 Has Chris got long hair?
- 5 Are Charlie's eyes green?
- 6 What colour is Charlie's hair?



# The Red Earth Festival

## A Native American Festival

Red Earth is a Native American festival in Oklahoma, USA. There are more than a hundred different tribes of Native Americans, including the Apache, Cherokee and Sioux. Every year, in June, thousands of families celebrate their traditions together at Red Earth.

## Mothers and Daughters

The Festival has got a special activity for mothers and their daughters: the Mother and Daughter dance competition. Ayita and Dyani are very good at dancing – they've got three prizes in the competition. Ayita hasn't got any sisters, so she and her mum are in the competition every year. They've got special costumes with colourful feathers.

## A Musical Procession

The Red Earth Festival has also got a procession through the streets of Oklahoma. Ayita's brother Len is in the procession with his friends. They've got instruments called rattles and water drums. It's a fantastic day!



1 19 Read and listen. Who are the people in the picture?

2 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 How many prizes have Ayita and Dyani got?  
a) two                      b) three
- 2 How many brothers and sisters has Ayita got?  
a) one brother and one sister  
b) one brother and no sisters
- 3 Have Ayita and her mum got feathers in their costumes?  
a) Yes, they have.    b) No, they haven't.
- 4 Has the Red Earth Festival got a procession?  
a) Yes, it has.            b) No, it hasn't.
- 5 Have Ayita's brother and his friends got instruments called guitars?  
a) Yes, they have.    b) No, they haven't.

3 Your voice Answer the questions.

- 1 What are the special celebrations in your country?
- 2 Have people got traditional costumes?
- 3 What are the activities at these celebrations?



## Grammar 2

### have got: questions and short answers

- 1 Look at the table. Then put the puzzle in the correct order.

questions	short answers
Have I got a prize?	Yes, I have. No, I haven't.
Has he / she / it got long hair?	Yes, he / she / it has. No, he / she / it hasn't.
Have we / you / they got special costumes?	Yes, we / you / they have. No, we / you / they haven't.

① ~~Yes, I have got.~~ X Yes, I have. ✓

got   noun   have / has   ?   subject

- 2 Complete the questions. Then write true answers.

Have you got a brother? No, I haven't.

- ... your teacher ... dark hair?
- ... you ... brown eyes?
- ... your best friend ... a sister?
- ... you ... a dog?
- ... your friends ... mobile phones?



- 3 Write questions about the picture. Then write short answers.

Mimi / brown eyes?  
Has Mimi got brown eyes?  
Yes, she has.

- Betty / a brother?
- Lois and Hal / four children?
- Lois / fair hair?
- the girls / long hair?
- Betty / glasses?
- Mimi / dark hair?

### How many ...?

- 4 Look at the examples. Translate the questions into your language.

How many prizes have they got?

They've got three prizes.

How many brothers and sisters has Ayita got?

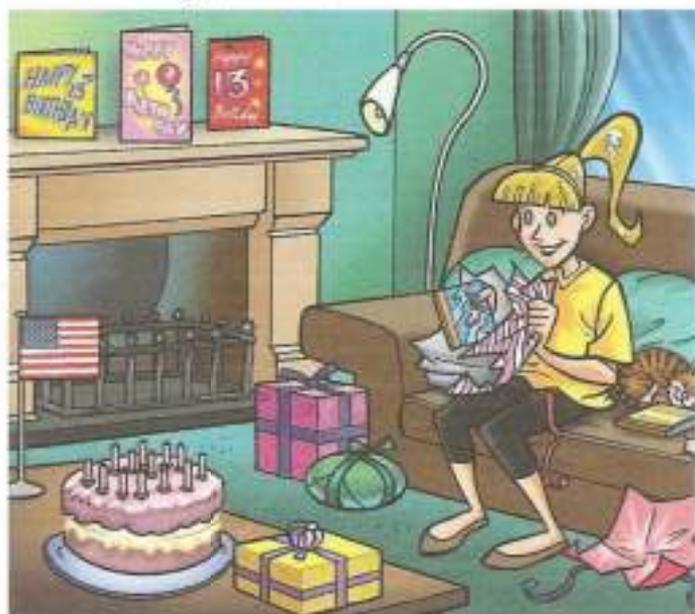
She's got one brother.

- 5 Write questions with *How many ...?*

candles

How many candles has she got?

- |                     |        |
|---------------------|--------|
| 1 birthday cards    | 2 CDs  |
| 3 birthday presents | 4 cats |



- 6 Look at the picture and write answers to the questions in exercise 5.

She's got 13 candles.

## Speaking

- 7 Ask and answer. Find the classmate with the most ...

brothers sisters cousins aunts uncles

How many brothers have you got?

I've got two brothers.

- 8 Write the results.

Tanya has got eight uncles.

Boris has got four sisters.



# Writing dossier

## A description of a band

### My Favourite Band

My favourite band is Tokio Hotel. The band's got four members. They're from Magdeburg in Germany.

Bill's the singer and Tom's the guitarist. They're twin brothers. Their birthday is on 1st September.

At the moment, Bill's got black hair and Tom's hair is fair. They've both got brown eyes.

Tokio Hotel is great. I've got all their CDs!  
by Kathrin (Berlin)



Tom and Bill are cool!

1 **20** Read and listen to the description and answer the questions.

- 1 Where are Bill and Tom from?
- 2 When is their birthday?
- 3 What colour eyes have they got?

2 Look at the Language focus. Translate the sentences into your language.

#### Language focus: 's = is / has / possessive

's = is	Bill's the singer.
's = has	Bill's got black hair.
's = possessive	Tom's hair is fair.

3 Look at the 's in these sentences. Is it *is*, *has* or *possessive*?

My favourite band's Good Charlotte. is

- 1 The band's got five members.
- 2 The singer's name is Joel.
- 3 Ivan's twin brother's called Anton.
- 4 Billy's the guitarist.
- 5 Joel's got a BMW.

### Writing plan

- 1 Plan a description of your favourite band. Use these ideas.  
How many members has the band got?  
Where are they from?  
When are their birthdays?  
What colour hair have they got?  
What colour eyes have they got?
- 2 Write a first version. Include this information.
  - ✦ information about the band
  - ✦ personal description
- 3 Check your writing.
  - ✓ Check words for describing people on page 25.
  - ✓ Check 's – is it *is*, *has* or *possessive*.
- 4 Write the final version and put it in your Dossier.

## Dialogue builder

### Shopping

- 1  21 Megan is shopping for gifts. Listen and complete the dialogue with these short answers.

Yes, we have. No, we haven't.



#### Shop assistant

Hello. Can I help you?

(1) ... Sorry!

(2) ... It's in the pop section.

It's over there, near the exit.

(3) ... They're over there, near the café.

#### Megan

Yes. Have you got the new Tokio Hotel CD?  
What about '19' by Adele? Have you got that?  
Where's that?

Thanks. Oh, have you got birthday cards?  
Great. Thanks!

- 2  21 Listen again and repeat. Practise your intonation.

- 3 Write a list of your family and friends and their birthdays. Write ideas for presents.

- 4 Prepare a new dialogue. Use your notes from exercise 3.

Mum - 21st May - a book?  
Gosha - 14th July - CD  
Sveta - 13th September - ?



#### Useful expressions

Can I help you?  
Have you got ...?  
Yes, we have. / No, we haven't.  
It's over there, near the ...

- 5 Work in pairs. Practise the dialogue.

 Hello. Can I help you?  
 Yes, have you got ...

# Language Guide

## Vocabulary

### Family

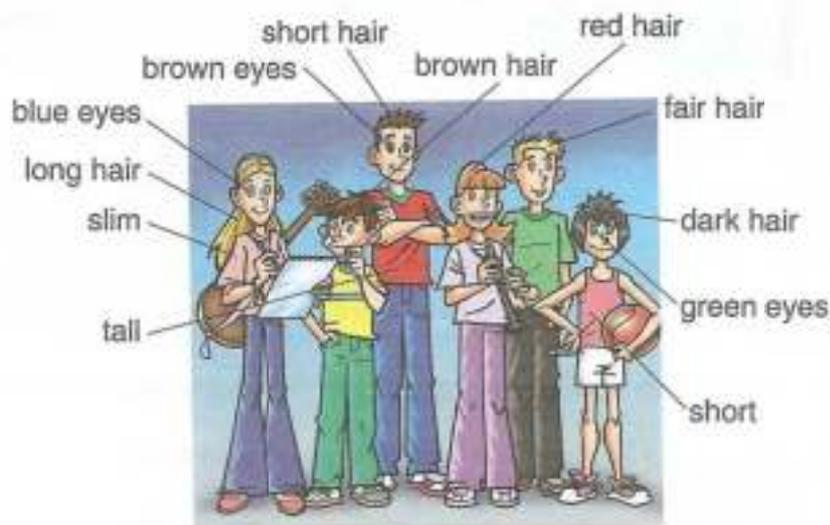
mum	dad
sister	brother
aunt	uncle
cousin	cousin
niece	nephew
grandma	grandad
wife	husband
daughter	son
granddaughter	grandson
stepmum	stepdad
sister-in-law	brother-in-law



mum + dad = parents  
 grandma + grandad =  
 grandparents  
 son + daughter = children

### Describing people

tall  
 short  
 slim  
 attractive  
 short / long hair  
 fair / brown / red / dark hair  
 blue / green / brown eyes  
 glasses / sunglasses



### Dictionary extra!

amazing (adj) ★★	feather (n) ★
ball (n) ★★★	gymnastics (n)
circus show (n)	house (n) ★★★
costume (n) ★	instrument (n) ★★★
dance (n) ★★★	juggler (n)
dog (n) ★★★	procession (n) ★
equipment (n) ★★★	street (n) ★★★
fantastic (adj) ★★	tribe (n) ★★

### Useful expressions

Can I help you?  
 Have you got ... ?  
 What about ... ?  
 Yes, we have. / No, we haven't.  
 It's over there, near the ...

# Grammar

## Have got: present simple

### affirmative

I've got (have got) You've got (have got) He / She / It's got (has got) We / You / They've got (have got)	blue eyes. long hair.
--	--------------------------

### negative

I haven't got (have not got) You haven't got (have not got) He / She / It hasn't got (has not got) We / You / They haven't got (have not got)	green eyes. short hair.
--	----------------------------

### questions

Have I got Have you got Has he / she / it got Have we / you / they got	a brother? a sister?
---	-------------------------

### short answers

Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.  
Yes, you have. / No, you haven't.  
Yes, he / she / it has. / No, he / she / it hasn't.  
Yes, we / you / they have. / No, we / you / they haven't.

- We use *have got* to talk about possession.
- In short answers, we don't use *got*.  
Yes, I have. ✓    Yes, I have got. X

## How many ...?

How many brothers and sisters have you got?  
How many cousins has Yolanda got?

- We use *How many* before plural nouns.
- We don't use *How many* to ask questions about age.  
How old are you? ✓  
How many years have you got? X



Grammar exercises → Workbook p101



# Progress check

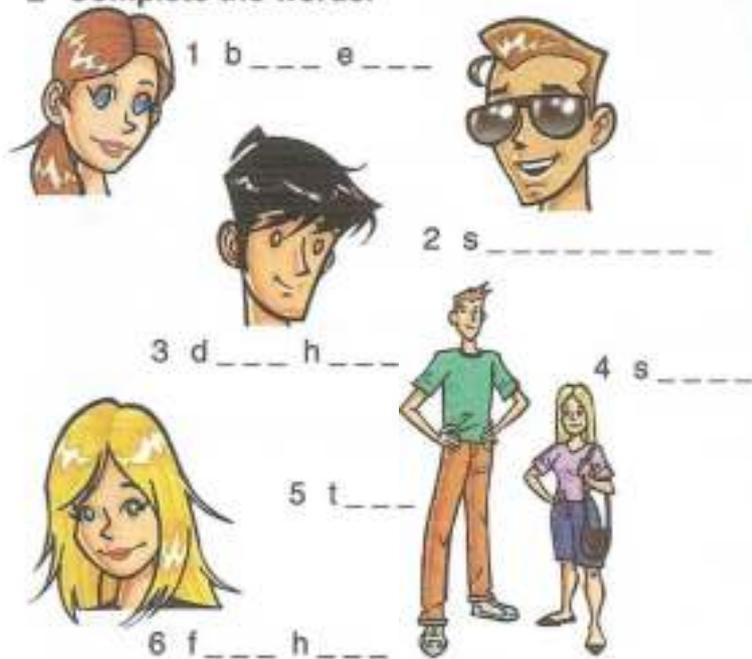
## Family

### 1 Complete the sentences with family words.

- Your father's brother is your ...
- Your ... is your mother's mother.
- Your aunt and uncle's children are your ...
- Your father's sister is your ...
- Your ... is your mother's father.
- Have you got any brothers or ...?

## Describing people

### 2 Complete the words.



### have got

### 3 Look at the information. Complete the sentences with the correct affirmative or negative form of *have got*.

	Ann	Bob	Carl
brothers	2	x	2
sisters	1	x	x
cousins	x	4	2

- Ann and Carl ... two brothers.
- Ann ... one sister.
- Bob ... a brother.
- Bob and Carl ... sisters.
- Bob and Carl ... cousins.
- Ann ... a cousin.

### 4 Write questions. Then look at the pictures in exercise 3 and write short answers.

- Ann / brown hair?
- Bob and Carl / glasses?
- Carl / green eyes?
- Ann and Bob / long hair?
- Carl / fair hair?

### How many ...?

### 5 Order the words to make questions. Then write true answers.

- cousins / How / have / many / got / you ?
- got / you / many / How / grandparents / have ?
- many / your / classroom / desks / How / has / got ?
- regions / Russia / got / has / How / many ?
- How / students / class / your / got / many / has ?

## Cumulative grammar 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

### 6 Choose the correct words. Then do the quiz.

## Are you a SIMPSONS fan?

### Try our quiz ...



- How / What** many fingers have the Simpsons got?  
a) three                      b) six
- What colour hair **have / has** Marge got?  
a) yellow                      b) blue
- When / Where** are the Simpsons from?  
a) Springfield                      b) New York
- What are Bart's **sister's / sisters'** names?  
a) Louise and May                      b) Lisa and Maggie
- Have / Has** the Simpsons got a pet?  
a) Yes, they have.                      b) No, they haven't.

Answers:  
1a 2b 3a 4b 5a

# Free Time

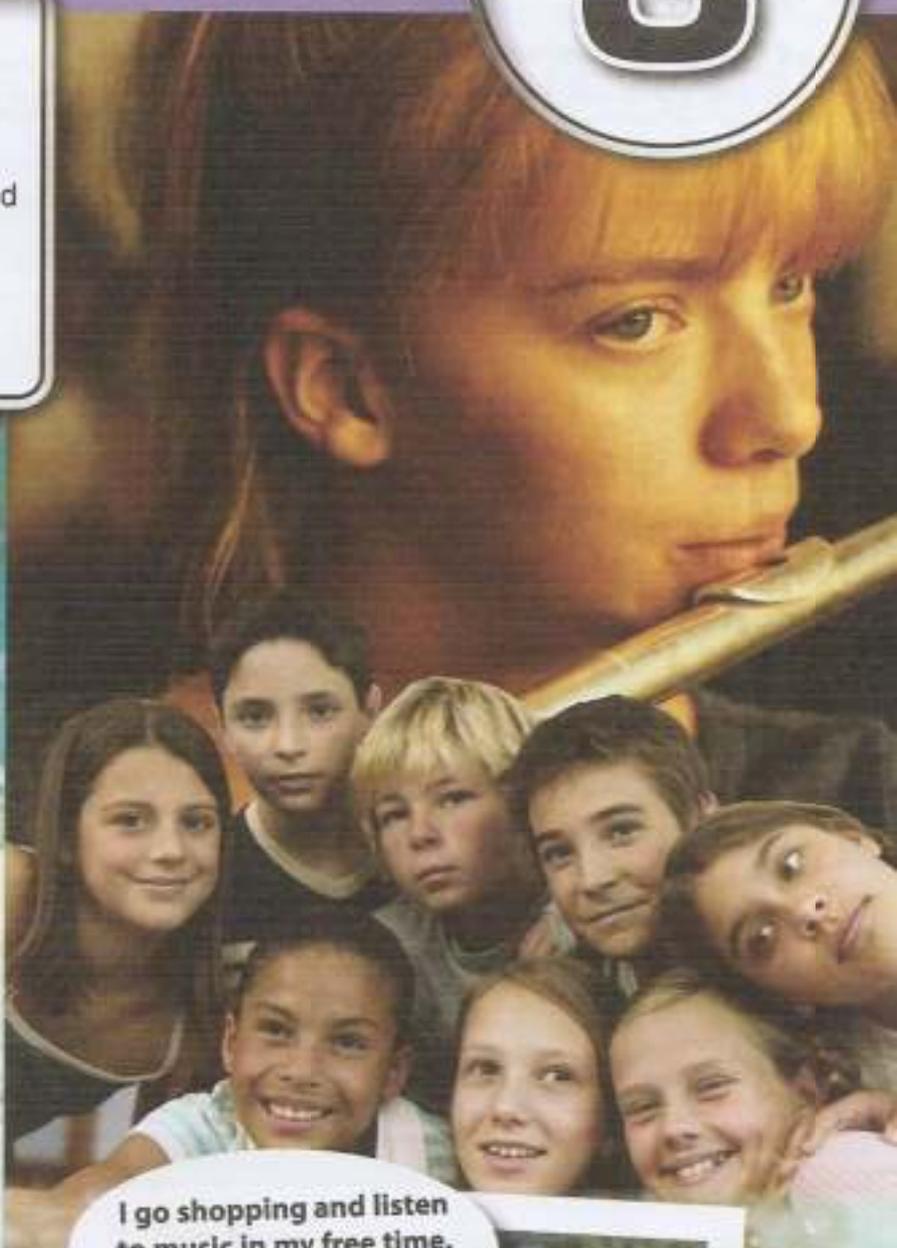
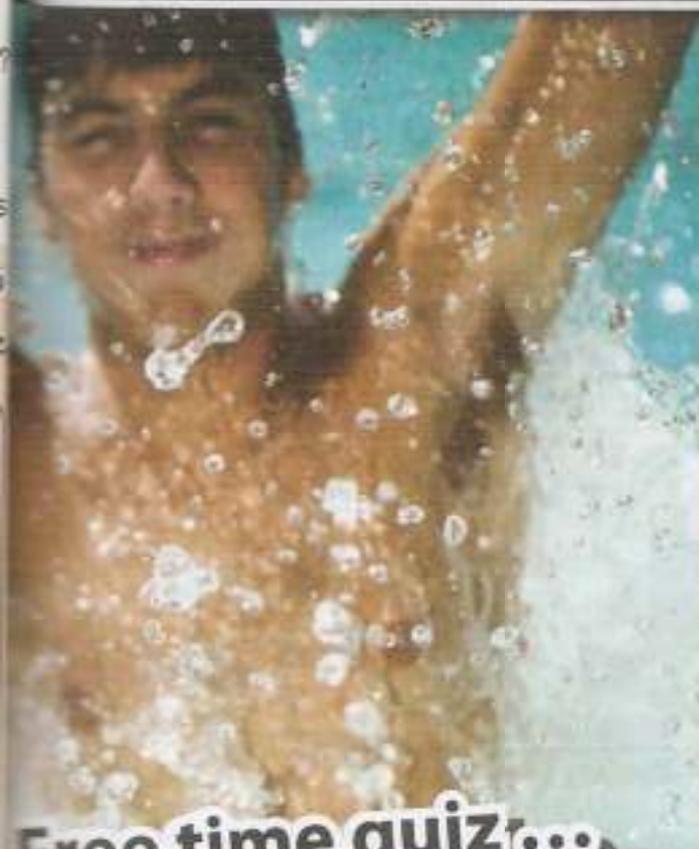
3

## Unit contents:

**Vocabulary** Free time activities; daily routines  
**Grammar** Present simple; adverbs of frequency

**Skills** Read about games testing  
Listen to Emma talking about the weekend  
Write an email  
Give instructions

**Across the curriculum** ICT  
**Culture** Ireland's Young Musicians



## Free time quiz...

- 1 For how many hours do British teenagers watch TV every day?  
a) one    b) two    c) three
- 2 How many British teenagers have got a computer in their bedroom?  
a) 32%    b) 55%    c) 86%
- 3 How much pocket money do 11–12 year olds get every week?  
a) £3.50    b) £5    c) £8.50

I go shopping and listen to music in my free time. What do you do in your free time?



 **Recycle** Which activities do you do at the weekend?

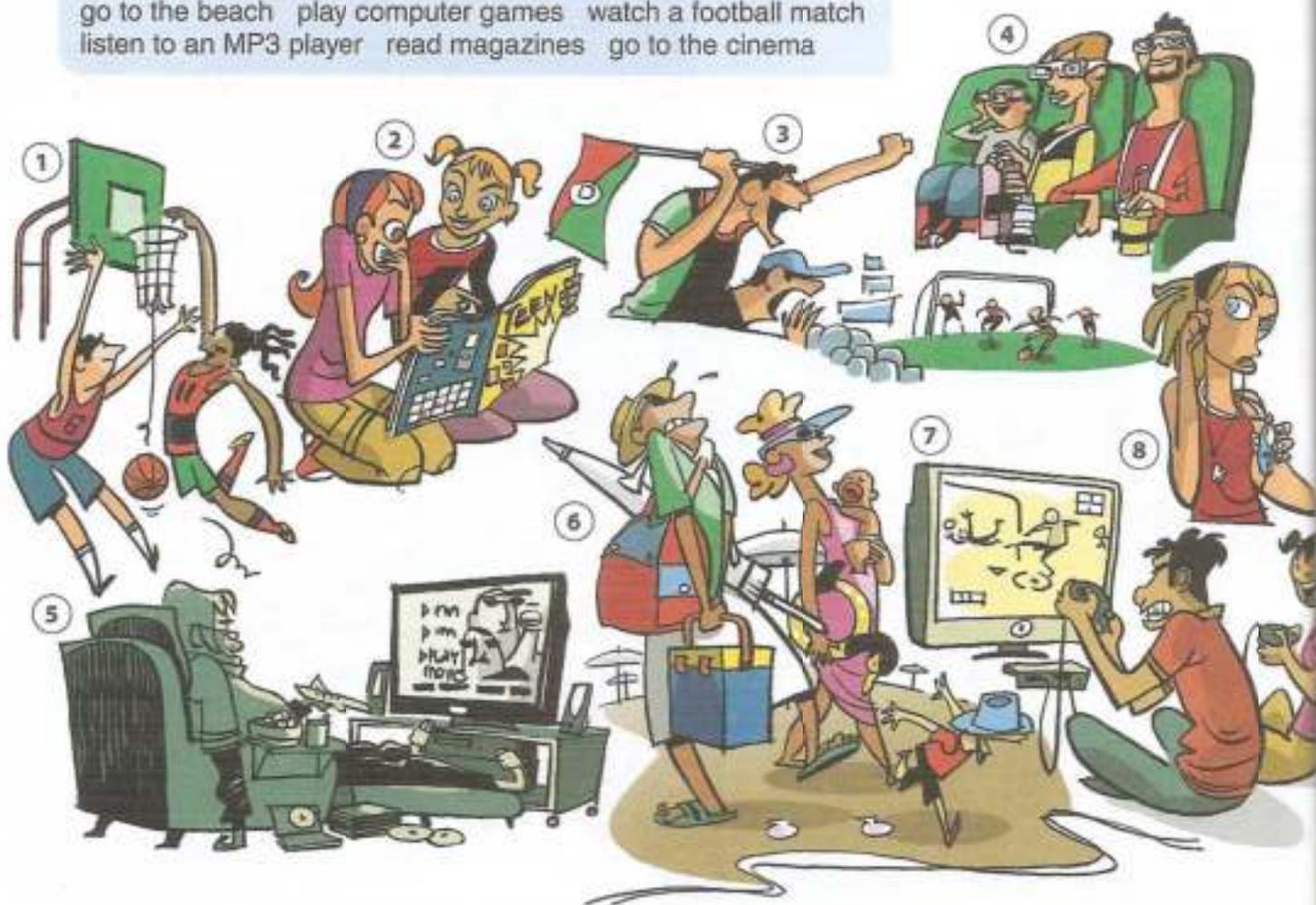
play football watch TV listen to music  
read go shopping meet friends

# Vocabulary 1

## Free time

1 Match the activities with the pictures. Which activities are not in the pictures?

play basketball watch a DVD read a comic listen to the radio  
go to the beach play computer games watch a football match  
listen to an MP3 player read magazines go to the cinema



2  Listen and repeat.

### Verb collocations

You can use the same verb with different expressions.

*play football / computer games*

When you learn a new verb, think about the expressions you can use.

**Look!**

4 *Your voice* Complete the sentences with true information for you.

- 1 In my free time I read ... and ...
- 2 I listen to ... and ...
- 3 I watch ... and ...
- 4 At the weekend I go to ... or ...
- 5 At school I play ... and ...

3 Copy and complete the table with words from exercise 1.

watch	a DVD, TV, a football match
read	
listen to	
play	
go to	

5 Compare your answers with a partner. Do you like the same things?

 **Vocabulary plus** → Workbook p118

# Turn Your Free Time into Cash!

Are you under 16? Do you want to make some extra cash?  
Click here to find out more about each job ...

Games testing

Film extras

Babysitting

TV quiz shows

If you like computer games, why not be a games tester? That's what Alex Potts does. Alex (15) is a student and he lives in Northern Ireland with his family. He goes to Belfast High School on Mondays to Fridays, but in his free time he's a games tester. 'This is perfect for me,' says Alex. 'I don't make a lot of money, but I keep all the games! I've got about 80 now. My favourites are *Zone* and *Urban Quest*.'

So what do games testers actually do? Alex explains: 'The company sends the games, and I play them at home at the weekend. Then I complete an online questionnaire. I write about my favourite things in the game, and about the problems. I also answer questions about the design, sound effects and instructions. It isn't difficult!'

Alex thinks that games testing is good experience for his future job. When he finishes school he wants to be a games designer. 'That's what my stepbrother does, and I think it's a fantastic job! But for now, testing games is fun. I recommend it to everyone!'



1 Look at the four different ideas for making money in your free time. Which is your favourite?

2  23 Read and listen. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 Alex is a film extra in his free time.
- 2 Alex doesn't go to school.
- 3 He makes a lot of money in his free time.
- 4 Alex plays games at the weekend.
- 5 He thinks that testing games is difficult.
- 6 Alex wants to be a games designer.

3 Find these verbs and check their meaning.

like live do make keep write think finish

4 Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1 How old is Alex?
- 2 Where is he from?
- 3 How many computer games has Alex got?
- 4 What are his favourite games?
- 5 Has he got any brothers or sisters?
- 6 In Alex's opinion, what are the advantages of being a games tester?



# Grammar 1

## Present simple: affirmative and negative

1 Look at the table. What is different about the *he / she / it* forms?

affirmative		negative	
I	play at the weekend.	I	don't make a lot of money.
You		You	
He		He	
She	lives in Ireland.	She	doesn't go to school.
It		It	
We		We	
You	send the games.	You	don't live in England.
They		They	

2 Read the spelling rules on page 43. Then write the third person form of these verbs.

- |         |         |          |
|---------|---------|----------|
| 1 watch | 3 study | 5 have   |
| 2 read  | 4 go    | 6 finish |

### Pronunciation: [s] [z] [ɪz]

a 24 Listen to the verbs.

[s] or [z]	[ɪz]
plays meets listens	teaches finishes

b 25 Listen and repeat. Which word has the [ɪz] sound?

- |           |         |           |
|-----------|---------|-----------|
| 1 speaks  | 3 goes  | 5 watches |
| 2 studies | 4 lives | 6 does    |

3 Choose the correct verb forms.

- You **study** / **studies** English.
- I **don't** / **doesn't** go to the beach.
- My cousin **live** / **lives** in Irkutsk.
- We **don't** / **doesn't** play sport on Mondays.
- I **watch** / **watches** TV in the evenings.
- My mum **don't** / **doesn't** speak English.

4 Complete the texts with the present simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Miguel's from Tenerife. He **uses** (use) Globish on the Internet. '80% of the world's internet pages are in English or Globish,' he (1) ... (say). Miguel (2) ... (study) English at school, but he (3) ... (think) it's very difficult. 'English has got about 650 000 words, but Globish has only got 1500 words!'

**FACT** 1.5 billion people in the world (4) ... (speak) Globish!

5 Read the texts again. Correct the sentences. Write one negative and one affirmative sentence.

Miguel uses Spanish on the Internet.  
Miguel *doesn't* use Spanish on the Internet. He uses Globish.

- Miguel studies Chinese at school.
- He thinks English is very easy.
- 15 billion people speak Globish.
- Lidia lives in Tenerife.
- She watches videos online.
- She writes to people in Japan.

### Word order

In English we don't change the word order:

subject + verb + object

My friends play volleyball.  
They don't play golf.

6 Order the words to make sentences. Then identify the subject, verb and object.

football / doesn't like / David  
David *doesn't* like football.  
subject verb object

- live / My / in / Canada / cousins
- speak / French / They
- watch / grandmother / television / My / doesn't
- prefers / She / radio / the

7 **Your voice** What about your family? Speak about it.

My mum *doesn't* listen to music.  
My brother reads comics.



Language guide p42

Lidia's 12 years old and she (5) ... (live) in Krasnodar. She's got a MySpace page, and she (6) ... (listen) to music online. 'I also (7) ... (write) to people in the USA,' she says. 'But I (8) ... (not meet) my American friends in person!'

**FACT** MySpace has got websites in over 20 countries.

# Vocabulary 2

## Daily routines

- 1 Match the activities with the pictures. Which activity is not in the pictures?

go to bed have lunch have a shower  
have dinner have breakfast go to school  
come home get up get dressed do homework  
clean your teeth tidy your room



- 2 26 Listen and repeat.

- 3 Describe Emma's average Monday.

She gets up at eight o'clock.

- 4 Your voice How is your average Monday different? Ask and answer in pairs.

- Do you get up at eight o'clock?  
No, I don't. I get up at half past seven.

## Listening

- 5 27 Listen to Emma talking about the weekend. Write *Saturday* or *Sunday* for each activity.

- play football
- go shopping
- read newspapers
- tidy room

- 6 27 Listen again. Choose the correct answers.

### On Saturdays ...

- Emma gets up at ...  
a) half past six.      b) half past eight.  
c) half past seven.
- Emma ... in the afternoon.  
a) meets friends      b) does her homework  
c) goes to school
- In the evening she ... with friends.  
a) goes to the park      b) goes to the cinema  
c) watches DVDs

### On Sundays ...

- Emma has lunch with her ...  
a) cousins.      b) friends.  
c) grandparents.
- Emma does her homework ...  
a) before lunch.      b) in the afternoon.  
c) in the evening.
- She goes to bed at ...  
a) ten o'clock.      b) half past ten.  
c) eleven o'clock.

### Time expressions

Use time expressions to say when you do something.

at: the weekend, night  
on: Mondays, Tuesdays  
in: the morning, the evening

Look!



Culture ...



Ireland

Population: 4 million

Capital: Dublin

Languages: English and Gaelic

# Ireland's Young Musicians

1 Read the text quickly and answer the questions.

- 1 What is the Fleadh Cheoil na hÉireann?
- 2 What are the instruments in a ceili band?
- 3 Do people dance at ceilis?

2 28 Read and listen. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Does Fionn play the fiddle?
  - a) Yes, he does.
  - b) No, he doesn't.
- 2 Does he sing?
  - a) Yes, he does.
  - b) No, he doesn't.
- 3 Does Fionn's band play at school discos?
  - a) Yes, it does.
  - b) No, it doesn't.
- 4 Do they practise every day?
  - a) Yes, they do.
  - b) No, they don't.
- 5 Do Fionn's parents play instruments?
  - a) Yes, they do.
  - b) No, they don't.

3 Your voice Answer the questions.

- 1 What is the traditional music in your region?
- 2 What traditional instruments do people play?
- 3 What are the traditional dances?
- 4 Do you know a traditional song?



The Fleadh Cheoil na hÉireann is a big festival of Irish music and culture that takes place every summer. Every year there is a competition for the best junior ceili band. This year's winners are the Ceili Ensemble from Limerick. Their fiddler Fionn Murphy (14), answers our questions ...

## Young Musicians of the Year

**Which instrument do you play?**

In the band, I always play the fiddle. Patrick plays the accordion, Nuala plays the flute and Ted plays the bodhrán.

**Do you sing, too?**

No, I don't. I never sing – I've got a terrible voice! But the other people in the band are good singers, so they often sing.

**Where does the band usually play?**

We usually play at local ceilis in social clubs or at school discos. Our music is great for dancing. Everybody dances at a ceili!

**How often do you practise?**

I practise with the band twice a week. We usually meet at the youth club on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Then we often play concerts on Fridays.

**Are you from a musical family?**

My parents love Irish music. Mum plays the flute and Dad plays the whistle. But my brothers don't play – they prefer Gaelic football!

**Gaelic Glossary**



bodhrán



fiddle



whistle

fleadh = an Irish festival

ceili = a social event with Celtic music and dancing

... learn more!



Ireland → Workbook p128

## Grammar 2

### Present simple: questions and short answers

1 Look at the table. Is it possible to translate the bold words into your language?

questions			short answers
Do	I you	play the flute?	Yes, I / you <b>do</b> .
Does	he she it	sing?	Yes, he / she / it <b>does</b> . No, he / she / it <b>doesn't</b> .
Do	we you they	dance?	Yes, we / you / they <b>do</b> . No, we / you / they <b>don't</b> .

- ! You go to concerts? **X**  
Do you go to concerts? **✓**

2 Complete the questions with *do* or *does*. Then match the questions and answers.

Does Andrei Arshavin play volleyball?  
No, he *doesn't*.

- ... Mary-Kate and Ashley Olsen live in the USA?
- ... Maria Sharapova play tennis?
- ... people speak Spanish in Brazil?
- ... you study English?
- ... JK Rowling write comics?

- Yes, I do.
- No, she doesn't.
- Yes, they do.
- Yes, she does.
- No, they don't.

3 Write questions. Then write short answers.

your cousins / live in your town?  
Do your cousins live in your town? Yes, they do.

- your best friend / go to your school?
- you / have lunch at school?
- your teacher / give you homework?
- your mum / watch TV every day?
- you / go to bed early?
- your classmates / study French?
- you / play a musical instrument?
- your parents / give you pocket money?
- your dad / work on Sundays?
- you / go to concerts at the weekend?

### Adverbs of frequency

4 Look at the example sentences. Are the adverbs before or after the verb?

She is **always** early.  
I **always** play the fiddle.  
I **never** sing.  
We **usually** meet at the youth club.  
We **often** play concerts on Fridays.  
He **sometimes** plays tennis.

5 Copy and complete the diagram with the bold words from exercise 4.



6 Write sentences. Use the correct adverbs of frequency.

- We / study grammar (✓)  
We *sometimes* study grammar.
- My friends / play sport (✓✓)
  - My brother / get up early (✓)
  - I / do my homework (✓✓✓✓)
  - We / listen to English songs (✓)
  - David / walk to school (✓✓✓)
  - I / go to bed late (X)
  - My friend / watch videos online (✓)
  - My parents / go to the theatre (✓✓)
  - Fionn / sing (X)

## Speaking

7 Prepare questions for your partner about his / her daily routine. Use words from each box.

How often When Where What time	do you	tidy your room? do your homework? have breakfast / lunch / dinner? get up? go to bed?
---	--------	---

8 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Where do you do your homework?
- I usually do my homework at home.



# Writing dossier

## An email

To: Sarah  
From: Andrea  
Subject: Find a penfriend

 Hello,  
My name's Andrea, and I'm 13 years old. I'm from Budapest, and (1) ... I've got one brother.  
In my free time I often listen to music. I like Green Day and I love Good Charlotte. I watch TV every day, but (2) ... They're boring!  
What about you? Do you like music?  
Andrea  
p.s. Send a photo!



To: Alex  
From: Patrick  
Subject: Find a penfriend

 Hi,  
I'm Patrick and I'm 14. I live in Dublin, and I go to Weston Secondary School. I've got one sister, but (3) ...  
I love sport! I love swimming, I'm a football fan and (4) ...  
At school I study Spanish and French. I don't like French, but Spanish is OK.  
Do you like sport?  
Write soon!  
Patrick



1 **29** Complete the emails with these sentences. Then listen and check.

- I don't play computer games.
- I play volleyball too.
- I go to Budapest Central School.
- I haven't got a brother.

2 Look at the Language focus. Translate the examples into your language. Then choose the correct words in sentences a) and b).

### Language focus: *and*, *but*

I like *Green Day* *and* I love *Good Charlotte*.

I don't like *French*, *but* *Spanish* is OK.

- We use **and** / **but** for contrasting information.
- We use **and** / **but** for similar information.

3 Join the sentences with *and* or *but*.

Katy plays football. She doesn't play golf.  
*Katy plays football, but she doesn't play golf.*

- Jane watches films. She watches music programmes.
- I like pizza. I don't like pasta.
- Peter studies French. He doesn't study Chinese.
- I like pop music. I love rock music.
- Sally goes to the cinema. She doesn't go to concerts.

## Writing plan

① Plan an email reply to Andrea or Patrick. Use these ideas.

- Your personal information
- Your family
- Your school
- Your free time
- Questions you want to ask

② Write a first version. Include this information.

- + personal information, family, school
- + free time: likes and dislikes
- + questions to ask

③ Check your writing.

- ✓ Use *and* and *but* correctly.
- ✓ Check the activities on page 34.
- ✓ Use the present simple correctly.

④ Write the final version and put it in your Dossier.

## Dialogue builder

### Giving instructions

- 1  30 Jack is helping his mum set up a phone call on the computer. Listen and complete the dialogue with these words.

Finally Then First



Mum

Can you give me a hand?  
I want to **make an internet call**,  
but I don't know what to do.  
Oh, OK. Then what?  
Right. **'Mum'**. Is that OK?  
  
OK. What next?  
All right. Is that all?  
Great. Thanks, Jack!

Jack

Sure! What's the problem?  
Oh, it's easy. (1) ... **download this program**. Look.  
(2) ... **choose a user name**.  
Yes, that's fine. Now remember to **turn on your microphone and speakers**.  
Now **select your friend's user name**.  
(3) ..., don't forget to **press the green button!**

- 2  30 Listen again and repeat. Practise your intonation.

Look!

#### Imperatives

We use imperatives to give instructions.  
**Press** the green button.  
**Don't press** the red button.

- 3 Your grandmother wants to know how to send a text message. Put the instructions in the correct order.

How to send a text message

- 1 Open the phone menu.
- 2 Send your message.
- 3 Turn your phone on!
- 4 Type your message.
- 5 Look in the phonebook.

- 4 Now prepare a dialogue. Use the instructions in exercise 3 and change the bold words in the dialogue.

- 5 Work in pairs. Practise the dialogue.

Can you give me a hand?  
Sure! What's the problem?

#### Useful expressions

Can you give me a hand?  
I don't know what to do.  
First / Then / Finally ...  
Remember to ...  
Don't forget to ...  
Is that all?

# Language Guide

## Vocabulary

### Free time



watch a football match



watch a DVD



play computer games



read magazines / a comic



listen to an MP3 player / the radio



go to the beach



go to the cinema



play basketball

### Daily routines



get up



have a shower



get dressed



have breakfast



clean your teeth



go to school



have lunch



come home



have dinner



do homework



tidy your room



go to bed

### Dictionary extra!

dance (v) ★★★

free time (n)

fun (n) ★★

games tester (n)

instruction (n) ★★★

job (n) ★★★

meet (v) ★★★

money (n) ★★★

musician (n) ★★

play (an instrument) (v) ★★★

singer (n)

weekend (n) ★★★

winner (n) ★★★

young (adj) ★★★

### Useful expressions

Can you give me a hand?  
I don't know what to do.  
First / Then / Finally ...  
Remember to ...  
Don't forget to ...  
Is that all?

# Grammar

## Present simple

<b>affirmative</b>	
I play You play He / She / It plays We / You / They play	football.
<b>negative</b>	
I don't play You don't play He / She / It doesn't play We / You / They don't play	basketball.
<b>questions</b>	
Do I play Do you play Does he / she / it play Do we / you / they play	computer games?
<b>short answers</b>	
Yes, I do. / No, I don't. Yes, you do. / No, you don't. Yes, he/she/it does. / No, he / she / it doesn't. Yes, we/you/they do. / No, we / you / they don't.	

- We use the present simple to talk about habits and routines.
- In the third person singular (*he / she / it*), we add *-s* to the verb.
- In the negative, we use *doesn't* with the third person singular.
- We always need a subject.  
*She lives in the USA.*

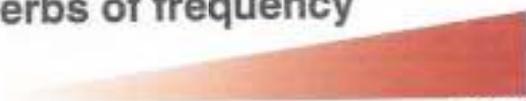
## Time expressions

- at + time: the weekend, night, one o'clock  
 on + day: Monday, Tuesday, Sundays, Saturday afternoon  
 in + part of the day: the morning, the evening, the afternoon  
 every: week, Thursday, day, month, night
- We don't use a plural with *every*.

## Third person spelling rules

- We usually add *-s* to the verb.  
*play* → *plays*   *like* → *likes*
- With verbs that end in a consonant + *y*, we omit the *y* and add *ies*.  
*study* → *studies*   *tidy* → *tidies*
- With verbs that end in *ch, sh, ss, x, or o*, we add *es*.  
*watch* → *watches*   *go* → *goes*  
*wash* → *washes*   *pass* → *passes*
- Irregular verbs change spelling.  
*have* → *has*   *be* → *is*

## Adverbs of frequency

0%  100%  
 never sometimes often usually always

- We use adverbs of frequency to say how often we do something.
- Adverbs of frequency usually go before the verb.  
*We never have lunch at school.*
- Adverbs of frequency go after *be*.  
*Our teacher is never late.*

## Imperatives

<b>affirmative</b>
Press the green button. Listen.
<b>negative</b>
Don't press the red button. Don't shout!

- We use the imperative to give instructions and orders.
- In the negative we use *don't*.
- The form is the same in the singular and plural.

 Grammar exercises → Workbook p103



# Progress check

## Free time

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

read go watch play listen

- 1 My parents ... to classical music.
- 2 Do you ... music magazines?
- 3 We ... to the beach every weekend.
- 4 I often ... DVDs on Saturdays.
- 5 My brother and I ... computer games.

## Daily routines

2 Join words from box A and B to make six routines.

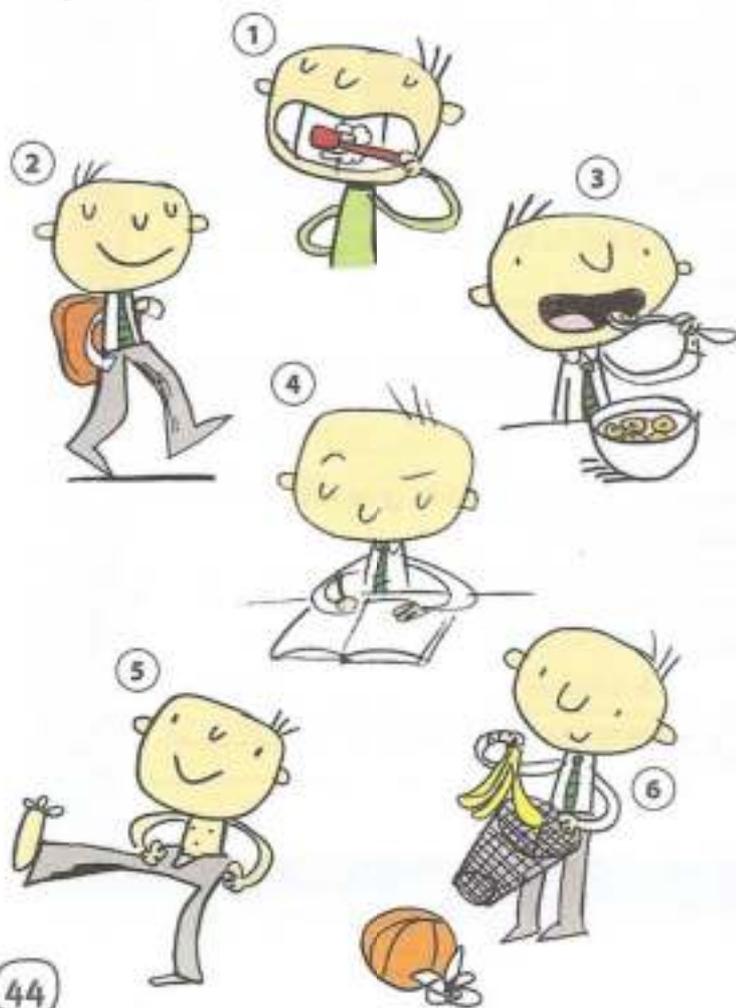
A

clean tidy have get do go

B

to school your homework breakfast  
your teeth your room dressed

3 Match the routines from exercise 2 with the pictures.



## Present simple

4 Complete the sentences with the affirmative form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 My mum ... (study) English.
- 2 I ... (go) shopping every weekend.
- 3 My sister ... (have) lunch at home.
- 4 My friends ... (watch) TV in the evening.
- 5 The class ... (finish) at ten o'clock.

5 Make the sentences in exercise 4 negative.

6 Complete the questions with *Do* or *Does*. Then write short answers.

- 1 ... your friends read comics? (X)
- 2 ... Homer watch TV? (✓)
- 3 ... your parents go to the cinema? (X)
- 4 ... Bart go to school? (✓)
- 5 ... your classmates speak English? (✓)
- 6 ... Lisa play basketball? (X)

## Adverbs of frequency

7 Put the adverbs in the correct place in the sentences.

- 1 I get up at six o'clock. (never)
- 2 Our English class starts at nine o'clock. (always)
- 3 My grandparents visit at the weekend. (often)
- 4 My friends and I play football in the park. (sometimes)
- 5 We don't have lunch at school. (usually)

## Cumulative grammar 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

8 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.



Jason is Jack's cousin. He (1) ... (be) 15 years old. He's British, but now he (2) ... (live) in Australia with his family. They (3) ... (have got) a big house near the beach. Jason (4) ... (have got) a lot of new friends in Australia. They (5) ... (be) very good at surfing, but Jason (6) ... (not be) an expert! He (7) ... (prefer) volleyball – he (8) ... (play) on the school team. He (9) ... (not play) football in Australia, but he still (10) ... (love) Arsenal!

# Revision 1

## Vocabulary

### Are you a film expert?



Daniel Craig



Nicole Kidman



Konstantin Khabensky



Scarlett Johansson

1 Which countries are these actors from? Write sentences. 4 points

2 What's the relationship between these actors? Write sentences. 4 points

PENÉLOPE CRUZ

TOM CRUISE

MARY-KATE OLSEN

ANDREI CHADOV

1 MONICA CRUZ

2 KATIE HOLMES

3 ASHLEY OLSEN

4 ALEXEI CHADOV

3 Match the films with the descriptions. 4 points

a aninconvenienttruth

b TITANIC

c VERTIGO

d HAPPY FEET

1 This is an old film about a big ship. The star of the film is Leonardo DiCaprio.

2 This an interesting film about global warming.

3 This film is about a small penguin called Mumble.

4 This is a very old film by Alfred Hitchcock. It's a thriller.

4 Choose the correct answers. 4 points

Lara Croft is a character from ...

- a) a TV programme.
- b) a computer game.
- c) a novel.

Bend it like Beckham is a film about ...

- a) golf.
- b) football.
- c) aerobics.

Air Bud is a film about ...

- a) music.
- b) shopping.
- c) basketball.

The actor in The Dark Knight is ...

- a) Tom Cruise.
- b) Christian Bale.
- c) Elijah Wood.

### Check your score!

1-4 Oh dear. You aren't a cinema expert!

5-10 You're interested in cinema, but you need to watch more films!

11-16 Congratulations – you're definitely a film fan!

# Reading

- 1 Read the text and complete the questions with these words.

How Who Where Are What Do

## The Walk of Fame

### Frequently Asked Questions

- 1 ... is the Walk of Fame?  
The Walk of Fame is in Hollywood, in California, USA. The stars are on the pavement, in the street.
- 2 ... many stars has the Walk of Fame got?  
It's got more than 2000 stars. The walk is more than five kilometres long!
- 3 ... all the stars for actors?  
No, they aren't. The stars are for real people or fictional characters in five categories: film, music, theatre, television and radio. All the stars are in a 'Walk of Fame' directory.
- 4 ... fictional characters have got stars?  
Lots of fictional characters have got stars, including Mickey Mouse, the Simpsons and Godzilla. Disneyland has also got a star.
- 5 ... the famous people visit their stars?  
Yes, they do. They always go to the presentation ceremony of their star. The ceremonies are open to the public, so you can go and see your favourite stars!
- 6 ... are the recent stars for?  
Every year, the Walk of Fame gets about 15 new stars. Some of the recent stars are for Christina Aguilera, Ricky Martin and the Red Hot Chili Peppers.

### 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Which American state is Hollywood in?
- 2 Is the Walk of Fame very long?
- 3 Do musicians get stars too?
- 4 Have the Simpsons got a star in the Walk of Fame?
- 5 When do famous people visit their stars?
- 6 Has Ricky Martin got a star?



## Listening

- 3 31 Listen to the radio competition and answer the questions.

### Mystery actor 1

- 1 What colour are his eyes?
- 2 Where is his wife from?

### Mystery actor 2

- 3 Has she got any brothers or sisters?
- 4 How many children has she got?

### Mystery actor 3

- 5 Where's he from?
- 6 Which sports does he like?

## Speaking

- 4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Who are your favourite actors?
- Have you got a favourite film?
- How often do you go to the cinema?
- Do you watch films in English?
- Do you watch films on TV?

## Project

Make a poster about stars on the Walk of Fame. Listen to your teacher's instructions.

# Grammar

## be and have got

- 1 Complete the text with the correct form of *be* or *have got*.



I (1) ... a fan of the actor Dakota Fanning. Her famous films (2) ... *War of the Worlds* and *Charlotte's Web*. Dakota (3) ... a very exciting life! Her parents (4) ... from Georgia, USA. Dakota (5) ... a sister called Elle. Dakota and Elle (6) ... both actors. They (7) ... fair hair and blue eyes. Dakota's hobbies (8) ... reading, ballet and swimming.

## Present simple

- 2 Complete the text with the present simple form of these verbs.

not go get study play want travel  
listen work not have

Josh is a student and an actor. He usually (1) ... up early, but he (2) ... to school. He (3) ... at home with a private tutor. After lunch Josh (4) ... to the film studio with his mum. He (5) ... for about four hours in the afternoon. Josh (6) ... much free time, but he (7) ... the guitar and he often (8) ... to rock music. He (9) ... to be a famous actor or a pop star!

## Adverbs of frequency

- 3 Order the words to make sentences.

- 1 go / sometimes / I / cinema / the / to
- 2 meet / I / usually / my / there / friends
- 3 new / We / watch / films / often
- 4 horror / films / I / watch / never
- 5 home / go / We / usually / late

## Question forms

- 4 Complete the questions for these answers. Use the present simple or the correct form of *be* or *have got*.



- 1 Who ... actors?  
My favourite actors are Johnny Depp and Daniel Radcliffe.
  - 2 Where ... live?  
Daniel Radcliffe lives in London and Johnny Depp lives in France.
  - 3 ... Daniel's new film on DVD?  
Yes, I have. It's great!
  - 4 Where ... from?  
Johnny is from the USA.
  - 5 ... fair hair?  
No, he hasn't. He's got dark hair.
  - 6 How often ...?  
I go to the cinema about once a month.
- 5 Choose the correct words.
- 1 Where are / is you from?
  - 2 He haven't / hasn't got a brother.
  - 3 You have / Have you got any brothers or sisters?
  - 4 How old are / Is he?
  - 5 Dakota Fanning don't / doesn't live in England.
  - 6 Daniel Radcliffe plays / play the guitar.
  - 7 How often you watch / do you watch DVDs?
  - 8 I watch usually / usually watch films at the weekend.

# English sketches

32 Listen and read. Then act out the sketch in groups.

## Characters

Girls Roxy, Lily

Boys Matt, Cal

Girl or boy Nicky

### On the first day of the school year

**Roxy** Hey, look! There are two new kids.  
**Cal** Where?  
**Roxy** Over there. Let's talk to them ...  
**Cal** *[a minute later]* Hi.  
**Roxy** You're new.  
**Matt** Hi. Yes, I am. Um ... we are. I'm ...  
**Roxy** Where are you from?  
**Matt** I'm from New Fareham ...  
**Cal** And you?  
**Lily** I'm from Parkgate. Hi, I'm ...  
**Roxy** I've got friends in New Fareham and Parkgate, they're nice places. You can be my friends. How old are you?  
**Lily** I'm 13. But wait a moment – who are you? What are your names?  
**Cal** Sorry. My name's Callum. My friends call me Cal. This is my sister, MR, or Roxy.  
**Roxy** Roxy, please. I prefer 'Roxy'.  
**Cal** And what are your names?  
**Matt** I'm Matt, Matthew.  
**Lily** Ana Lilia. But I'm usually Lily.  
**Cal** Ana Lilia? Are you Spanish?  
**Lily** No, I'm not. I'm British but my mum's Mexican. My brother's name is Amancio.  
**Roxy** How do you spell *that*?  
**Lily** A-M-A-N-C-I-O. Why?  
**Roxy** Hmm. It's a *funny* name.  
**Cal** Roxy! Ana Lilia's a nice name.  
**Lily** Thank you.  
**Roxy** Listen! *[school bell]* It's nine o'clock and Mr Green's never late.

### At morning break

**Cal** Do you live near school?  
**Lily** Yes. I live on Stanton Road, in a house with a red door. Do you know it?  
**Cal** Yes, I do! It's a new house, I think.  
**Lily** Yes, it is.  
**Cal** Great! It's near my house. Do you play basketball?  
**Lily** No, not often ... but I sometimes play football ...  
**Cal** Brilliant! We can play at the weekend. Do you watch DVDs?  
**Lily** Yes, of course I do *[laughs]*.  
**Cal** Do you want to come and watch a film? What's your phone number? ... Uh-oh.

Here's my sister. And there's Matt. See you! *[Roxy arrives with Nicky. Cal goes.]*

**Roxy** Nicky, this is Lily. Her mother's Mexican, but Lily's British.  
**Lily** Hi, Nicky.  
**Nicky** Hello! Welcome! Do you like computer games? Where do you live? Have you got any brothers or sisters? Ana Lilia? Can you speak Spanish?  
**Roxy** Nicky always asks a million questions! Nicky, don't be boring.  
**Lily** Yes, I can. It's my second language.  
**Nicky** Oh, Spanish is difficult! You can help me with my homework! Fantastic!

### In the corridor

**Matt** Why has your sister got two different names? MR and Roxy ...  
**Cal** Her real name's Marjory Rose.  
**Matt** Ahhhhh! I see! That's very long!  
**Cal** It's our grandmother's name, but MR doesn't like it. She prefers Roxy. It's a filmstar's name, I think *[they laugh]*. Hey, we usually do our homework at Nicky's house on Wednesdays, and then we go to the cinema. Do you want to come?  
**Matt** OK, yes, thanks. Who's Nicky?  
**Cal** Hey, Nicky! Can Matt come to the cinema with us? Matt's new.  
**Matt** Hi.  
**Nicky** Hello! Two new guys! Two *interesting* people! It's a fantastic day! YES you can come! I've got a million comics from different countries – you can read them. And I've got music and computer game magazines. *[Nicky passes Matt an mp3 player]* Listen to this – do you like it? They're my favourite.  
**Matt** *[to Cal]* Is Nicky OK? Is (s)he always like this?  
**Cal** Yeah, (s)he's always happy. (S)He's fun.  
**Matt** Where do you have lunch? Do you eat here in school?  
**Nicky** Oh no! We never eat at school! We have lunch in the sun! Look, there's MR.  
**Cal** And there's Lily. She's very nice.  
**Nicky** Hey! Lunch! New friends! I love new friends. Oh wonderful day!

# Learning for Life

# 4

## Unit contents:

**Vocabulary** School subjects; skills and abilities

**Grammar** love, hate, (don't) like + -ing; object pronouns;  
review of question forms: word order; Why ...? /  
Because ...

**Skills** Read about schools around the world  
Listen to a radio interview with a blind athlete  
Write a questionnaire  
Make suggestions

**Across the curriculum** Maths

**Culture** Going to School on a Scottish Island



Schoolsquiz<sup>coo</sup>

My favourite subjects are  
Science and Geography.  
What are your favourite  
subjects?

- 1 Where are the students in the picture above?
- 2 How many subjects do 12-year-old British students usually study?  
a) 8      b) 12      c) 16
- 3 How many 12-year-olds in Britain learn a foreign language?  
a) 80%    b) 100%    c) 60%
- 4 How many weeks' holiday do students usually have in the summer?  
a) four    b) six      c) eight



**Recycle** Write the expressions in order for your school day. What time do you do these things?

have lunch walk / go to school do my homework  
start classes go home have a break

## Vocabulary 1

### School subjects

1 Match the school subjects with the pictures.

2 Listen and repeat.

English Maths Science French Music Art and Design  
History Geography Drama PE (Physical Education)  
ICT (Information and Communication Technology)



3 **Your voice** Invent your ideal timetable.  
Copy the timetable and write the subjects.

	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
9-10	History				
10-11					
11-12					

4 **Work in pairs.** Ask and answer about your ideal timetable.

- What have you got on Monday morning?
- I've got History and ...

# UK EDUCATION

1 Read the article. What do students learn at The BRIT School?

## The BRIT School



They love dancing. How about learning to dance?



He likes playing the guitar and she really likes singing. Would you like to study Music?

It's lunch break at The BRIT School, in South East London, and there's an hour before lessons begin again. However, at this school, the students want to study during their lunch break. Some students usually play the guitar together and write songs. Other students practise dance exercises. The BRIT School students like doing their homework in the library and talking about their dreams and plans for the future. Freya thinks that she will be a singer and star in famous musicals in the West End of London. Bill thinks he'll be a soap star and Tania hopes she'll be a successful actress.

The BRIT School is a special performing arts school for 14–19 year olds who want to work in music, theatre, dance or design. The school is state funded. This means that the students don't pay any money to go to the school. The students work very hard at The BRIT School. 'People think that we have a lot of fun here and sing and dance all day,' says 16-year-old Tania, 'but there are a lot of things to learn. We also study the normal school subjects: History, Science, English, Maths and IT. By Friday afternoon, I'm always tired!'

The BRIT School opened in 1991 and it now has some very famous old students. Adele, Katie Melua, The Kooks and Athlete, all went to The BRIT School.

2 Find these words in the article. Can you guess what they mean?

soap star musicals successful  
state funded performing arts design

3 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1 Where is The BRIT School?
- 2 How long is the lunch break?
- 3 How old are the students at the school?
- 4 What subjects do students study?
- 5 When did the school open?



# Grammar 1

## love, hate, (don't) like + -ing

- 1 Translate the example sentences. What are the bold verbs in your language?

### love, hate, (don't) like + -ing form

Sheila **loves** playing with her friends.  
 She **hates** staying at home all day.  
 Tony **doesn't like** studying outside.  
 He **likes** going to class.

- 2 Look at the information. Then write sentences with *like, love, don't like or hate* and the correct verbs.

### Your favourites ...

Love it?    
 Like it?    
 Don't like it?    
 Hate it?

#### TV

Hollyoaks  
 The Simpsons  
 Eastenders

#### Music

McFly  
 rap music

#### Free time

shopping with friends  
 computer games



Emma, 12,  
from London

Emma loves watching 'Hollyoaks'.  
 She likes ...

- 3 Copy and complete the list in exercise 2 for you. Then write sentences.

I like watching ...

## Speaking

- 4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer. Use these expressions.

getting up early    playing football  
 going to school    reading comics  
 watching 'The Simpsons'  
 playing computer games

- Do you like getting up early?  
 No, I don't. I hate getting up early!

## Object pronouns

### subject pronouns

I	you	he	she	it	we	you	they
me	you	him	her	it	us	you	them

### object pronouns

- 5 Choose the correct words.

- Freya likes singing. Her friends like listening to **her / him**.
- Tania studies performing arts at The BRIT School. Her friends study with **her / him**.
- Freya's favourite subject is Music. She loves **it / them**.
- Bill's friends play the guitar during their lunch break. Bill plays with **us / them**.
- We want to go to The BRIT School. Can you send **we / us** some information?

- 6 Complete the sentences with a subject or object pronoun.

- Music and Art are my favourite subjects. I **love ...!**
- ... **don't like** Maths, but I love ICT.
- Our English teacher gives ... homework every day.
- My sister goes to my school, but ... **isn't in** my class.
- My brother wants to be a pop star. ... **loves** music.
- My mum sometimes helps ... with my homework.

- 7 **Your voice** Complete the sentences with your own words and these object pronouns.

us them him her it me

- ... and ... are my favourite subjects. I **love ...!**
- ... is a horrible subject. I **hate ...!**
- ... is my favourite singer. I **like ...!**
- ... is a terrible singer. I **don't like ...!**
- ... is a great teacher. He / She is kind to ...
- ... is my classmate. He / She sits next to ...

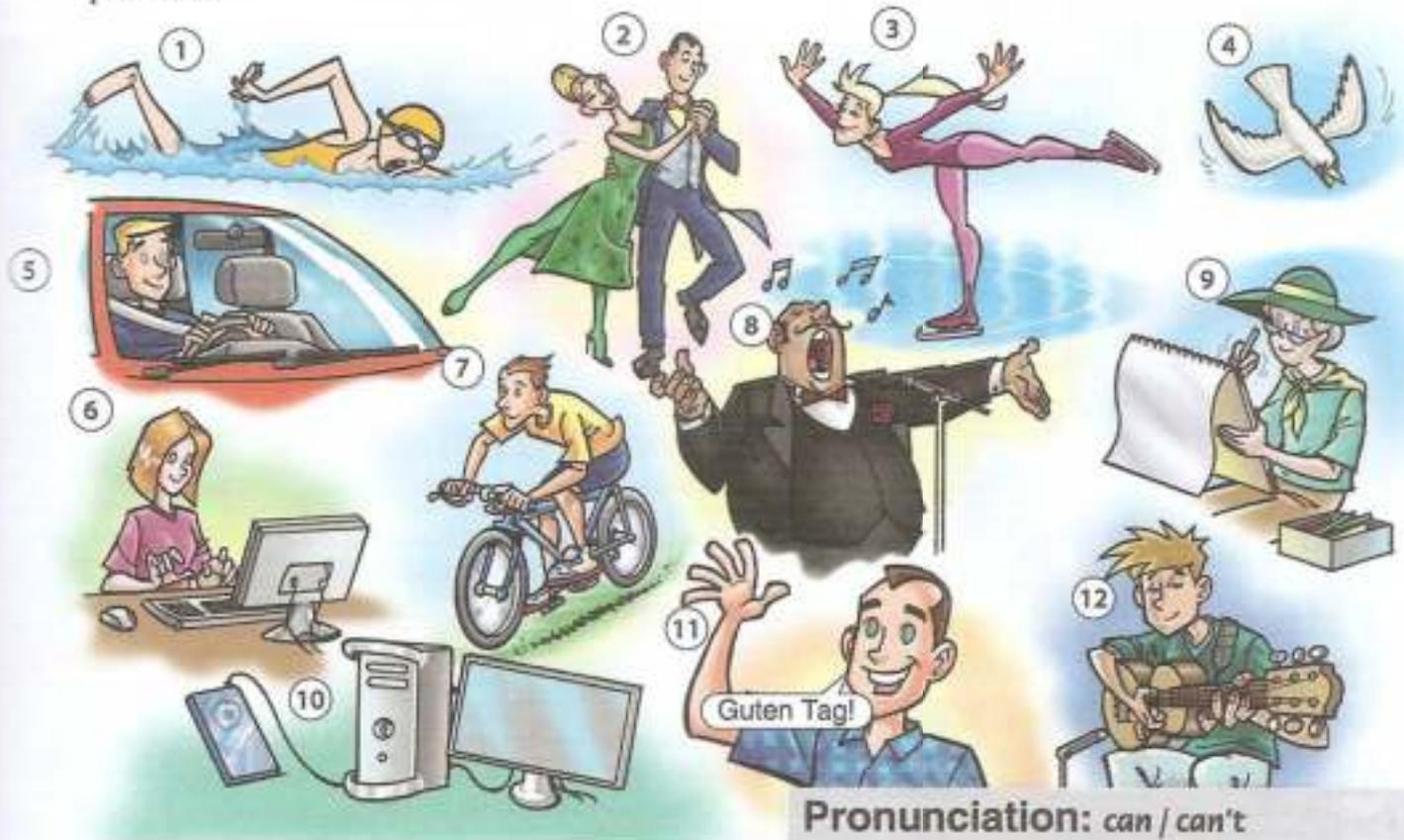


## Vocabulary 2

### Skills and abilities

1 Match the skills and abilities with the pictures.

sing skate draw ride a bike fly  
swim use a computer dance  
play an instrument download music  
speak a foreign language drive



2 34 Listen and repeat.

3 Your voice Can you do the skills and abilities in the pictures? Write four sentences.

I can ride a bike.  
I can't drive.

Look! Look at the example sentences. What form is the verb after **can**?

I can sing.                      She can't fly.  
He can jump.                  We can't dance.

4 Make sentences.

- 1 play / the guitar / can / I .
- 2 can / at home / you / music / download ?
- 3 Spiderman / can't / can / fly / but / climb / he .
- 4 English / she / can / speak ?
- 5 can / skate / you ?
- 6 use / my parents / a computer / can't .

**Pronunciation:** can / can't

a 35 Listen to the sentences.

I can use a computer. I can't play the guitar.

b 36 Listen. Do you hear **can** or **can't**?

c 36 Listen again and repeat.

## Speaking

5 Work in pairs. Ask and answer using these expressions or your ideas.

swim roller-skate ride a bike  
sing an English song play the violin  
speak English draw cartoons

- Can you swim?
- No, I can't.
- Can you ride a bike?
- Yes, I can.

6 Tell the class.

- Vera can't swim, but she can ride.



Culture ...



# Scotland

Population: 5.1 million  
Total number of islands: 787 (95 inhabited)  
Smallest secondary school: Out Skerries (six students)

## Going to School on a Scottish Island



### Duncan Gray tells us about his unusual school ...

Q Hi Duncan. Where is your school?

A It's on the island of Out Skerries.

Q And how many students has your school got?

A It's got six students, and one teacher - Mrs Smith.

Q Does Mrs Smith teach all the classes?

A No, she doesn't. Different teachers fly to the island for some classes.

Q So, can you study all the subjects there?

A Yes, we can. We study Music, Art and French with different teachers.

Q Do you use computers at school?

A Yes, we do. We often use the Internet.

Q Do you do PE on the island?

A No, we don't. We go to the sports centre in Lerwick.

Q Do you like going to a small school?

A Yes, I do. I love it!

Q Why?

A Because the teacher always helps you.

1 Look at the map. Where is Out Skerries?

2 37 Read and listen to the interview. Then complete the sentences.

- 1 Duncan's school is in the ... Islands.
- 2 There are ... students at the school.
- 3 The teacher's name is ...
- 4 Duncan studies Music, Art and ... with different teachers.
- 5 He goes to the sports centre in ...

3 Your voice Answer the questions.

- 1 How many students and teachers has your school got?
- 2 Can you study all the subjects at your school?
- 3 Do you use computers at school?
- 4 Do you like your school? Why?

... learn more!



Scotland → Workbook p125

## Grammar 2

### Review of question forms: word order

- 1 Add one question from the interview on page 54 to each table.

be questions			
question word	am / is / are	subject	other words
-	Are	you	from Spain?
Where	is	the teacher?	-

have got questions				
question word	have / has	subject	got	other words
-	Has	your teacher	got	a car?
What	have	you	got?	-

other present simple questions				
question word	do / does	subject	verb	other words
-	Does	Chris	go	to school?
What time	do	you	get up?	-

- 2 Order the words to make questions.
- do / go / you / What time / to bed ?
  - your teacher's / When / birthday / is ?
  - finish / this class / When / does ?
  - got / your school / a computer room / Has ?
  - play / How often / do / sport / you ?
  - Where / your parents / are / from ?

- 3 Answer the questions in exercise 2.

### Why ...? / Because ...

- 4 Translate the sentences. Are the bold words different in your language?

Why do you like going to a small school?  
**Because** the teacher always helps you.

- 5 Match 1-4 with a)-d) to make questions.
- Why are there
  - Why is
  - Why does
  - Why don't
- 50 stars on the American flag?
  - they use Euros in Northern Ireland?
  - Ireland green?
  - the American president live in Washington DC?

- 6 Match these answers to the questions in exercise 5.

- Because it's the capital of the USA.
- Because there are 50 states in the USA.
- Because it's part of the United Kingdom.
- Because it often rains.

## Listening

- 7  38 Listen to part of a radio interview. Which five topics does Susan talk about?

school her favourite subjects  
 her teachers athletics her howlidays  
 her family her free time football

- 8  38 Listen again and answer the questions.



- Where does Susan go to school?
- What's her favourite subject?
- Does Susan run alone or with someone?
- What does she like doing in her free time?
- How many brothers and sisters has she got?
- What does Susan want to do in the future?



# Writing dossier

## A questionnaire

### Your English Class

Name: *Mette Pind*

School: *Brønshøj School, Denmark*

1 How often do you study English?

*English is my first foreign language, so I have three hours a week.*

2 What do you usually do in your English class?

*We usually practise speaking or study grammar. We love listening to music, so our teacher often plays English songs.*

3 Do you watch English films?

*No, we don't. We never watch films.*

4 ...

*Yes, it has. I love playing English games!*

5 ...

*No, she isn't. She's Danish, so English isn't her first language.*

6 Does your teacher give you lots of homework?

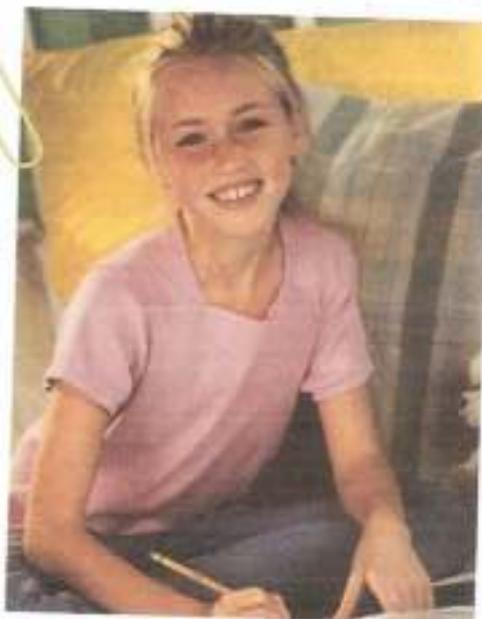
*Yes, she does. She usually gives us homework after every class.*

7 How often do you do exams?

*We always do an exam at the end of each term.*

8 ...

*Yes, I do. I want to travel in the future, so languages are important.*



1 **39** Complete the questionnaire with these sentences. Then listen and check.

- a Do you like studying English?
- b Is your teacher from Britain?
- c Has your school got computers?

2 Look at the Language focus. Find two more sentences with *so* in the questionnaire.

#### Language focus: *so*

*English is my first foreign language, so I have three hours a week.*

*We love listening to music, so our teacher often plays English songs.*

3 Match 1–5 with a)–e). Then join them with *so*.

1b) *I love films, so I often go to the cinema.*

1 Have films:

2 Simon doesn't like sport.

3 I don't go to school on Sundays.

4 We don't study French at school.

5 Kay's parents are from China.

a) I usually get up late.

b) ~~I often go to the cinema.~~

c) He never plays football.

d) She can speak Chinese.

e) I can't speak French.

### Writing plan

- ① Write a questionnaire for your classmates about their English class. Write 6–8 questions. Use the model to help you.
- ② Give the questionnaire to a classmate and get the answers.
- ③ Check your writing.
  - ✓ Use question forms correctly.
  - ✓ Use *like + -ing* correctly.
  - ✓ Use *so*.
- ④ Write a final version and put it in your Dossier.

## Dialogue builder

### Making suggestions

- 1 **40** Megan and Jack are looking at after-school clubs. Listen and complete the dialogue.

Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Computer club 3.30 - 4.30	Homework club 3.30 - 4.15	Football practice 3.30 - 4.30	Swimming 3.45 - 5.00	Photography 3.30 - 4.30
ICT room	Room D12	Football pitch	Meet at school entrance (bus to pool)	Room C3
Volleyball 3.45 - 4.45	Drama 4.00 - 5.00	Arts and crafts 3.45 - 4.45	Drama 4.00 - 5.00	Music club 3.30 - 4.15
Outdoor courts	The hall	Art room	The hall	Music room

Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Computer club 3.30 - 4.30	Homework club 3.30 - 4.15	Football practice 3.30 - 4.30	Swimming 3.45 - 5.00	Photography 3.30 - 4.30
ICT room	Room D12	Football pitch	Meet at school entrance (bus to pool)	Room C3
Volleyball 3.45 - 4.45	Drama 4.00 - 5.00	Arts and crafts 3.45 - 4.45	Drama 4.00 - 5.00	Music club 3.30 - 4.15
Outdoor courts	The hall	Art room	The hall	Music room



Megan

Let's sign up for after-school clubs!  
How about (1) ...?  
Oh, OK. Let's do **drama**, then.  
Why don't we go (2) ...?  
It's on **Thursday** at (3) ...

Jack

OK. What shall we do?  
Sorry, I can't. It's on **Friday** – I'm busy on **Fridays**.  
**Drama**? No way! I hate **drama**!  
OK. Good idea! When's that?  
Great. Shall we do something else as well?

- 2 **40** Listen again and repeat. Practise your intonation.

- 3 Look at the timetable and answer the questions.

- Where is the computer club?
- What time does the homework club start?
- Which sports can students do after school?
- When can students do drama?
- Where is the photography club?

- 4 Prepare a new dialogue. Use the activities in the timetable and change the words in bold in the dialogue.

- 5 Work in pairs. Practise your dialogue.

- Let's sign up for after-school clubs!
- OK. What shall we do?

### Useful expressions

Let's ...  
What shall we do?  
How about ...?  
Sorry, I can't. I'm busy on ...  
No way! I hate ...  
Why don't we ...?  
Good idea!

# Language Guide

## Vocabulary

### School subjects



English



Maths



Science



French



Music



Art and Design



History



Geography



Drama



PE (Physical Education)



ICT (Information and Communication Technology)

### Skills and abilities



swim



dance



skate



drive



ride a bike



fly



sing



draw



use a computer



play an instrument



download music



speaking a foreign language

### Dictionary extra!

children (n)

class (n) ★★★

fly (v) ★★★

help (v) ★★★

island (n) ★★★

play (v) ★★★

study (v) ★★★

tell (v) ★★★

unusual (adj) ★★★

want (v) ★★★

world (n) ★★★

### Useful expressions

Let's ...  
 What shall we do?  
 How about ...?  
 Why don't we...?  
 Sorry, I can't. I'm busy on ...  
 No way! I hate ...  
 Good idea!

## Grammar

### love, hate, (don't) like + -ing

- ⊗ I love listening to music.
  - ⊗ I like going to the cinema.
  - ⊗ I don't like going shopping.
  - ⊗ I hate getting up early.
- We use the -ing form of the verb after love, like, don't like and hate.

### Object pronouns

#### subject pronouns

I	you	he	she	it	we	you	they
me	you	him	her	it	us	you	them

#### object pronouns

I go to school with them.  
They go to school with me.

### can

#### affirmative

I / You / He / She / It / We / They	can	sing.
-------------------------------------	-----	-------

#### negative

I / You / He / She / It / We / They	can't	fly.
-------------------------------------	-------	------

#### questions

Can	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	dance?
-----	-------------------------------------	--------

#### short answers

Yes,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	can.
No,	they	can't.

- We use can to talk about abilities.
- After can we use the infinitive without to.  
Can you ride a bike? ✓  
~~Can you to ride a bike?~~ X

### Review of question forms: word order

#### be questions

question word	am/is/are	subject	other words
—	Are	you	from Russia?
Where	is	the teacher?	—

#### have got questions

question word	have/has	subject	got	other words
—	Has	your teacher	got	a car?
What	have	you	got?	—

#### other present simple questions

question word	do/does	subject	verb	other words
—	Does	Chris	go	to school?
What time	do	you	get up?	—

### Why...? / Because ...

Why do you like school?  
Because I see my friends here.

- We use why in questions and because in answers.
- After why, use the usual present simple question word order.
- After because, use the usual present simple affirmative word order.



Grammar exercises → Workbook p105



## Progress check

### School subjects

1 Write the school subjects.



### Skills and abilities

2 Complete the sentences with these words. Use *can* and *can't*.

speak play drive use sing ride

- I ... a car. X
- I ... a bike. ✓
- My grandfather ... a computer. ✓
- He ... a foreign language. X
- We ... English songs. X
- ... you ... an instrument? ✓

### love, hate, (don't) like + -ing

3 Match the words and symbols.

♥♥♥    ♥    ☹☹☹    ☹

don't like    hate    love    like

4 Write sentences.

- I / ♥ / study / English
- I / ☹☹ / get up / early
- My mum / ☹ / drive
- I / ♥♥ / listen / to music
- My brother / ☹☹ / tidy / his room

### Object pronouns

5 Match the subject and object pronouns.

I    you    he    she    it    we    you    they

you    us    them    her    it    me    him    you

6 Complete the sentences with subject or object pronouns.

- My brother plays football. I sometimes go with ...
- My aunt lives in Mexico. ...'s a teacher.
- Art and Drama are my favourite subjects. ...'re great.
- We live in a big house, and our grandfather lives with ...
- My brother and I are twins. ... go to the same school.
- I don't understand this. Can you explain it to ...?

### Review of question forms

7 Write the questions for these answers.

- I'm fine, thanks.
- Yes, I have. I've got one sister and two brothers.
- I go to bed at half past ten.
- He's from Spain.
- She lives in London.
- No, I don't. I hate dancing!

### Cumulative grammar 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

8 Choose the correct words.

- A (1) **How** / **How many** old are you?  
 B I (2) **have got** / **am** 12.  
 A And where (3) **you study** / **do you study**?  
 B At Edinburgh University!  
 A That's amazing! What's your (4) **favourite subject** / **subject favourite**?  
 B French. I love (5) **learn** / **learning** languages.  
 A How many foreign languages (6) **can you speak** / **you can speak**?  
 B Oh ... about ten.  
 A Ten languages? (7) **Do you travel** / **You travel** a lot then?  
 B Oh, no. I (8) **never travel** / **travel never**. I just read books!



# Wonderful Wildlife

# 5

## Unit contents:

**Vocabulary** Endangered animals; adverbs of manner

**Grammar** Present continuous; present simple and continuous

**Skills** Read about the World Wide Fund for Nature

Listen to a talk about animals

Write about an animal for a web project

Make arrangements

**Across the curriculum** Science

**Culture** Australia's Weird and Wonderful Wildlife



**NEXT  
6 km**

I've got a dog called Bonnie and two guinea pigs. Have you got any pets?



## Animal quiz

- 1 Look at the signs. What animals are there?
- 2 Which countries are the signs from?
- 3 Name three farm animals.
- 4 How many animals can you write in one minute?  
*ant, bear, cow, dog, ...*

# Vocabulary 1

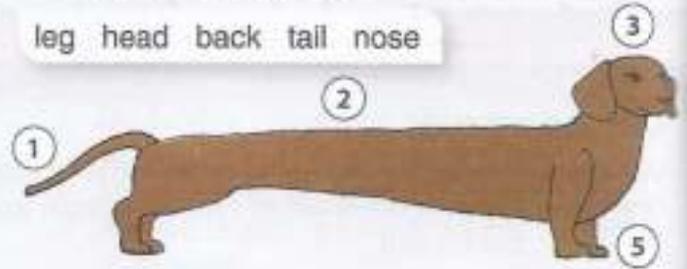
## Endangered animals

1 Match the animals with the pictures. Which four animals aren't in the pictures?

turtle eagle gorilla whale rhino wolf  
polar bear tiger frog owl panda  
orang-utan rattlesnake elephant  
snow leopard shark

Recycle Copy the picture and label the dog with the body parts.

leg head back tail nose

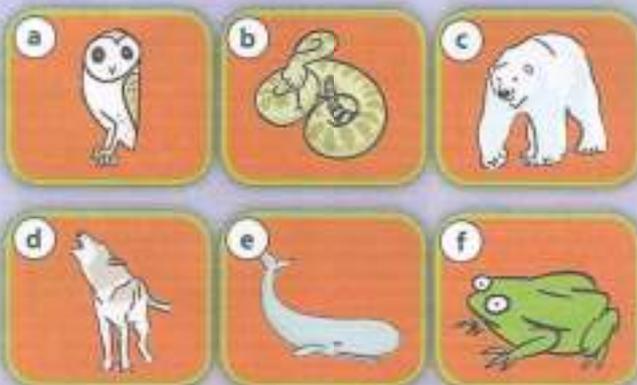


2 41 Listen and repeat.

3 42 Listen to the ringtones. Can you identify the six animals?



## New ringtones!



4 Your voice Choose an animal from exercise 1. Write a description.

This is a very big animal. It lives in the sea. It can't walk, but it can swim.

5 Work in pairs. Listen to your partner's description. Can you guess the animal?

- Is it a whale?
- Yes, it is.

Vocabulary plus → Workbook p120



# Manor School Chooses Our 'Charity of the Year'

5

1 Look at the WWF logo. Does this organisation work in your country?

2 **43** Read and listen. Write a list of all the animals in the text.

3 Read the text again.  
Answer the questions.

- 1 What is WWF?
- 2 Why are some animals in danger of extinction?
- 3 Why are the students at Manor School doing sponsored events?
- 4 What kind of sharks live in the sea around Scotland?
- 5 What are Year 10 students doing to help WWF?
- 6 How can people find out more information about WWF?

This year we're trying to raise £10000 for our 'charity of the year' – WWF (World Wide Fund for Nature). WWF is an international organisation that protects wildlife around the world. It's trying to help endangered animals like rhinos, dolphins and pandas. A lot of these animals are disappearing because their habitats are changing, or because hunters are killing them. Many of them are also suffering because of pollution.

Here at Manor School we're doing a lot of sponsored events this year to raise money. The students in class 3E are doing a sponsored swim with sharks. But don't worry – they aren't swimming with dangerous sharks! The swim is part of a WWF campaign to protect sharks in the sea around Scotland. These sharks are called 'basking sharks' and they aren't dangerous to humans.

We're also doing lots of other things to help WWF this year. For example, Year 10 students are adopting endangered animals like tigers and elephants. Unfortunately they can't take them home with them, but they have got photos. So, what are YOU doing to save endangered animals? If you want to know more, go to the WWF website ([www.wwf.org](http://www.wwf.org)). And if you want to help, contact our biology teacher, Mr Wright.



Across the curriculum

Science → p138

# Grammar 1

## Present continuous: affirmative and negative

1 Look at the table. What are the full forms of the bold words?

affirmative			negative		
I	'm		I	'm not	
He			He		
She	's	studying.	She	isn't	working.
It		working.	It		studying.
		swimming.	We		walking.
We			We		
You	're		You	aren't	
They			They		

2 Read the spelling rules in the Language guide on page 71. Then copy and complete the table with the *-ing* form of these verbs.

have sleep swim ride fly run eat dance sit

+ <i>-ing</i>	<i>æ</i> + <i>-ing</i>	double consonant + <i>-ing</i>
sleeping		

3 Complete the sentences with the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- We ... (not dance) at the moment.  
We ... (study) grammar.
- Our teacher ... (not watch) TV now.  
She ... (write) on the board.
- My parents ... (not play) tennis today.  
They ... (work).
- I ... (not ride) my bike at the moment.  
I ... (sit) in the classroom.
- It ... (not rain) today. The sun ... (shine).

### Pronunciation: *-ing*

a **44** Listen and repeat.  
studying walking working listening

b **45** Listen. Do you hear a) or b)?

- a) work      b) working
- a) swim      b) swimming
- a) wear      b) wearing
- a) live      b) living

4 Complete the text with the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

I'm *standing* (stand) here next to the River Thames in London. An enormous whale (1) ... (swim) in the river! The whale (2) ... (not go) to the sea - it (3) ... (move) in the direction of the city centre. It's incredible! Hundreds of tourists (4) ... (take) photos. Experts (5) ... (try) to help the whale, but it's very difficult. All around the world, people (6) ... (watch) the whale on TV. Here in London, everyone is amazed.



## Present continuous: questions and short answers

5 Look at the examples. Then put the puzzle in the correct order.

What are you doing? What is he saying?

?       be       question word  
 subject       *-ing* form

6 Look at the table. Then order the words to make questions and write short answers.

questions			short answers
Are	you	listening?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
Is	he / she / it	moving?	Yes, he / she / it is. No, he / she / it isn't.
Are	we / they	watching?	Yes, we / they are. No, we / they aren't.

you / sleeping / are?

Are you sleeping? No, I'm not.

- working / Is / mum / your?
- English / Are / writing / in / you?
- your / studying / Are / grammar / classmates?
- your / Are / playing / friends / football?
- you / Are / to / music / listening?
- your / Is / writing / teacher?

## Vocabulary 2

### Adverbs of manner

- 1 Read the rules. How do you form adverbs in your language?

#### adverbs of manner

We use adverbs of manner to describe an action.  
Stick insects are *slow*. They move *slowly*.

↑ adjective    ↑ adverb

We usually form adverbs with the adjective + *-ly*.  
*slow* → *slowly*

The adjective *good* has got an irregular adverb.  
*good* → *goodly* X *well* ✓

The words *fast* and *high* are both adjectives and adverbs.

*fast* → *fastly* X *fast* ✓

- 2 Check the meaning of these adverbs. What are the adjectives?

badly well quietly loudly quickly  
slowly safely dangerously fast high

*badly* - *bad*

- 3  Listen, check and repeat.

- 4 Choose the correct words.

## Ugly Bugs and Creepy-Crawlies

- 1 Stick insects can't run or fly. They move very **slow / slowly**.



- 2 Cockroaches run very **fast / quick**. They can run 5km an hour.



- 4 Mosquitoes are **dangerous / dangerously** for humans. They kill lots of people every year.



- 6 Fleas are very quiet / **quietly**. You can't hear them.



3 Spiders have got eight eyes, but they can't see **good / well**.



- 5 Crickets sing **loud / loudly**. You can hear them 1 km away!

## Speaking

- 5 Work in pairs. Do the questionnaire.



- 1 You're sitting in your classroom and suddenly you see a cockroach. What do you do?
  - a) I leave it - I'm not afraid of cockroaches.
  - b) I run out of the classroom ... as quickly as possible!
  - c) I kill it. Cockroaches are horrible!
- 2 You're in your bedroom and you see a big spider. What's your reaction?
  - a) Fantastic! I can catch it and put it in my sister's bed!
  - b) No reaction - spiders aren't dangerous, are they?
  - c) I scream. Loudly!
- 3 You're walking in the mountains and you see a snake. Do you ...
  - a) move away, quietly and slowly?
  - b) feel paralysed with fear?
  - c) take it home and keep it as a pet?
- 4 Your best friend has got a tarantula at home. What's your opinion?
  - a) No problem. Tarantulas are good pets if you look after them well.
  - b) Hmm. The tarantula is OK if it stays quietly in its box!
  - c) Aaagh! Small spiders are bad but tarantulas are terrible!

#### Scores

1 a) 1 b) 3 c) 2    3 a) 1 b) 3 c) 2  
2 a) 2 b) 1 c) 3    4 a) 1 b) 2 c) 3

4-5 You aren't afraid and you respect all kinds of animals. For you, all creatures are good - even creepy-crawlies!

6-9 Be careful with creepy-crawlies - they've got feelings too, you know!

10-12 Oh dear. Are you afraid to leave the house?!

- 6 Calculate your scores. Are you afraid of creepy-crawlies?



Culture ...



# Australia

Population: 20 million people and 130 million sheep!

Capital: Canberra

Other main cities: Sydney, Melbourne, Perth

## Australia's Weird and Wonderful Wildlife



Anteaters aren't reptiles – they're mammals. This anteater is eating hundreds of ants with its 60-cm long tongue. They eat 30 000 ants every day!



The platypus usually lives on land. It can swim well, but it can't breathe under water. This platypus is looking for food in the water.

Wallabies are small kangaroos. These animals are called marsupials. This wallaby is carrying its joey (baby) in its pouch. The joey develops slowly, and it stays in the pouch for nine months.



Emus are very tall birds – they're about 1.5 metres tall. They can't fly but they can run quickly. These emus are running about 60 km per hour.



This creature is called a glider. It lives in the trees, but it can't fly. It's jumping 40 metres from tree to tree. Gliders eat the pollen from flowers.



Be careful – don't swim here! This great white shark is swimming very near the beach. It's four metres long and it's got 2800 teeth.

1 What animals can you see in the pictures? Do you know any other Australian animals?

2 Guess the correct words.

- 1 Anteaters are mammals / reptiles.
- 2 A platypus can / can't swim.
- 3 Baby wallabies grow / don't grow very fast.
- 4 Emus can / can't fly.
- 5 Gliders eat birds / pollen.
- 6 Great white sharks are / aren't dangerous.

3 47 Read and listen. Check your answers.

4 *Your voice* Answer the questions.

- 1 Which animals are typical in your country?
- 2 Are there any dangerous animals?
- 3 Which animals do people have as pets?



# Grammar 2

5

## Present simple and continuous

1 Copy and complete the table with sentences 1-4.

present simple: habitual actions	present continuous: actions in progress
Anteaters eat 30 000 ants every day.	This anteater is eating hundreds of ants.

- The platypus usually lives on land.
- This platypus is looking for food at the moment.
- These emus are running quickly.
- Gliders eat pollen from flowers.

Look!

### Time expressions

With the present simple we use:  
adverbs of frequency (*always, never, usually, etc*)  
*every day / week once / twice a week*  
With the present continuous we use:  
*now at the moment*

2 Choose the correct words.

- I **watch** / 'm **watching** TV every day.
- I **don't watch** / 'm **not watching** TV at the moment.
- We **study** / 're **studying** now.
- We **study** / 're **studying** English three times a week.
- My teacher **works** / **is working** today.
- She **never works** / **is never working** on Saturdays.

3 Read about Britain's Top pets. Then complete the texts with the present simple or continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

4 Complete the questions with the present simple or present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- Where ... the cat ... (relax) in the photo?
- How many hours ... cats ... (sleep)?
- Where ... the fish ... (swim) in the photo?
- ... pet rabbits ... (like) eating carrots?

5 Answer the questions in exercise 4.



Language guide p71

## Listening

6 **48** Listen to the talk. Which words do you hear?

snake owl stick insect turtle frog  
parrot spider scorpion whale



7 **48** Listen again. Answer the questions.

- How many people are giving the talk?
- Is the snake dangerous?
- What are the stick insects doing?
- How old are the turtles?
- What is the parrot saying?
- Are the animals staying at the school all week?

## Top pets!

British people love their pets. There are seven million cats and six million dogs in Britain! Here are our favourites this week ...

In this photo, Sally's cat (1) ... (sleep) in her favourite place!



Guess what!

Cats usually ... (sleep) 13 hours a day.

Guess what!

Goldfish usually (3) ... (live) for 5-10 years.



Jill's goldfish are perfectly happy - here they (4) ... (swim) in their new aquarium.

Emma's rabbit (5) ... (eat) its favourite food in this great photo.



Guess what!

Wild rabbits (6) ... (not eat) carrots!

# Writing dossier

## A web project

### Wildlife in My Country: Puffins

Puffins live on the Scottish islands in summer. These birds are (1) **black / blue** and white, and they've got colourful bills. Their feet are yellow in winter and (2) **orange / black** in summer.

Puffins can swim very well. (3) **Fish / Insects** are their favourite food. They can carry (4) **three / 30** fish!

Puffins are friendly birds. In this picture they're walking near the tourists. People are taking photos of them.

by Jamie  
(Scotland)



1 **49** Read the web project and guess the correct words. Then listen and check.

2 Look at the Language focus. Choose the correct words to complete the rules.

#### Language focus: using adjectives

- Puffins live on the Scottish islands in summer.
- Fish are their favourite food.
- Their feet are yellow in winter.

- Nationality adjectives **have / haven't** got a capital letter.
- Adjectives go **before / after** the noun.
- Adjectives **have / haven't** got a plural form in English.

3 Correct the errors in these sentences.

- Bulls are typical spanish animals. X
- They are usually browns or blacks. X
- The golden eagle is a bird big. X
- It eats smalls mammals. X
- Dogs are my animals favourite. X

### Writing plan

① Plan a web project about a typical animal from your country. Find a picture on the Internet and answer these questions.

- Where does this animal live?
- What colour is it?
- What can / can't it do?
- What does it usually eat?
- What is the animal doing in your picture?

② Write a first version. Include the information.

- ✦ habitat and description of the animal
- ✦ the animal's abilities
- ✦ description of your picture

③ Check your writing.

- ✓ Use the present simple for habitual actions.
- ✓ Use the present continuous to describe your picture.
- ✓ Check the adjectives.

④ Write the final version and put your Dossier.

# Dialogue builder

## Making arrangements

- 1 **50** Listen to the dialogue. What are Megan and Emma doing tomorrow?



Emma

Hi Megan! I got your text. What are you doing tomorrow?

I'm going to the aquarium with my cousins.  
Do you want to come?

We're leaving home at **ten o'clock**.

Yes – there's a **café** there.

Yeah – **ten o'clock** at my house, OK?

Megan

Nothing special. Why?

What time are you going?

Great! Are you having **lunch** there?

OK. See you tomorrow then.

Right. See you later!

- 2 **50** Listen again and repeat. Practise your intonation.

Present continuous for future

We can also use the present continuous to talk about definite future plans.

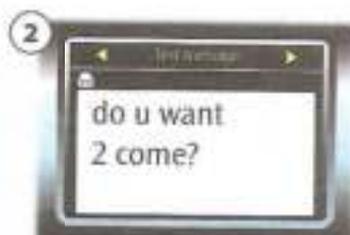
We're leaving home at ten o'clock.

**Look!**

- 3 What do the text messages mean? Complete the words.



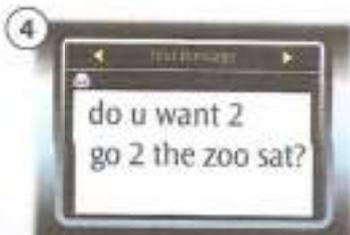
what are you doing tomorrow?



Do ... want ... come?



We ... going ... the IMAX ...



Do ... want ... go ... the zoo on ... ?

- 4 Prepare a new dialogue. Use these places or your own ideas. Change the bold words in the dialogue.

the London Eye the zoo the cinema

- 5 Work in pairs. Practise your dialogue.

Hi! What are you doing tomorrow?

I'm ...

### Useful expressions

What are you doing tomorrow?

Nothing special.

What time are you going?

We're leaving home at ...

See you tomorrow. /

See you later.

# Language Guide

## Vocabulary

### Endangered animals



turtle



eagle



gorilla



whale



rhino



wolf



polar bear



tiger



frog



owl



panda



orang-utan



rattlesnake



elephant



snow leopard



shark

### Adverbs of manner

Adjective	Adverb
good	well
bad	badly
quiet	quietly
loud	loudly
slow	slowly
quick	quickly
dangerous	dangerously
safe	safely
fast	fast
high	high



### Dictionary extra

breathe (v) ★★

charity (n) ★★★

dangerous  
(adj) ★★★

disappear (v) ★★★

dolphin (n) ★

flower (n) ★★★

food (n) ★★★

hunter (n) ★

kill (v) ★★★

pollution (n) ★★★

protect (v) ★★★

sponsor (v) ★★

swim (v) ★★

tongue (n) ★★

tree (n) ★★★

water (n) ★★★

wonderful (adj) ★★★

### Useful expressions

What are you doing tomorrow?  
Nothing special.  
What time are you going?  
We're leaving home at ...  
See you tomorrow. / See you later.

## Grammar

### Present continuous

affirmative	
I'm (am) You're (are) He / She / It's (is) We / You / They're (are)	studying. running.
negative	
I'm not (am not) You aren't (are not) He / She / It isn't (is not) We / You / They aren't (are not)	working. swimming.
questions	
Am I Are you Is he / she / it Are we / you / they	sleeping? eating?
short answers	
Yes, I am. / No, I'm not. Yes, you are. / No, you aren't. Yes, he / she / it is. / No, he / she / it isn't. Yes, we / you / they are. / No, we / you / they aren't.	

- We use the present continuous to talk about actions in progress at the moment.
- We form the present continuous with:  
subject + *be* + verb + *-ing*
- In questions, the order is:  
*be* + subject + verb + *-ing*
- In short answers, we don't repeat the verb + *-ing*.  
Is it eating? Yes, it is. ✓ Yes, it is eating. ✗

### Spelling: verb + *-ing*

- We form the present participle of most verbs with the infinitive + *-ing*.  
*sleep* → *sleeping* *eat* → *eating*
- When the verb ends in *-e*, we omit the *-e* and add *-ing*.  
*have* → *having* *make* → *making*
- When a verb has only one syllable and ends with one vowel and one consonant (except *w*, *x* or *y*), we double the consonant and add *-ing*.  
*swim* → *swimming* *stop* → *stopping*

### Present simple and continuous

*Cats sleep for 13 hours a day.* (routine)  
*This cat is sleeping.* (at the moment)

- We use the present simple for routines and habits.
- We use the present continuous to describe what is happening at the moment.

### Present continuous for future

- We also use the present continuous for definite plans in the future.  
*We're going to the cinema tomorrow.*  
*What are you doing next weekend?*
- When we use the present continuous to talk about the future, we usually use a future time expression.  
*tomorrow, next weekend, next week, next month, next year*

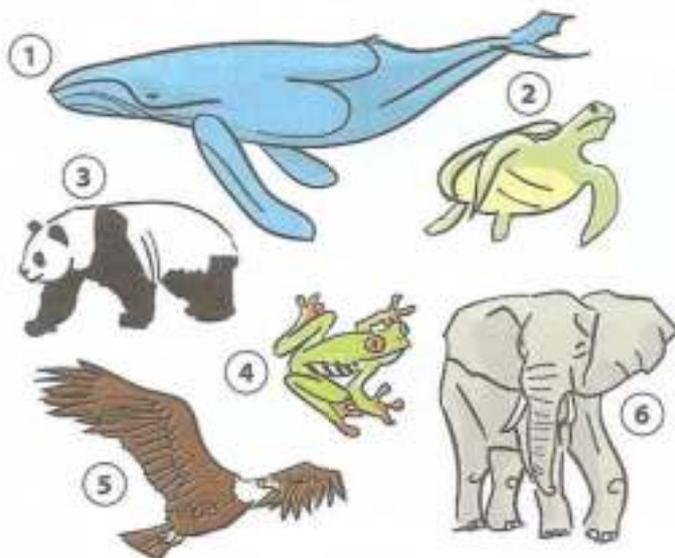




## Progress check

### Endangered animals

1 Write the animal words.



### Adverbs of manner

2 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Tigers can run **quick** / fast.
- 2 Please be **quiet** / quietly!
- 3 Elephants can swim **good** / well.
- 4 Is this snake **safe** / safely?
- 5 Cats aren't good swimmers. They swim **bad** / badly.
- 6 Some frogs are very **loud** / loudly. You can hear them at night.

### Present continuous

3 Complete the sentences with the present continuous affirmative form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 We ... (sit) in the park.
- 2 David ... (study) Chinese.
- 3 I ... (work) at the moment.
- 4 The dogs ... (eat) in the kitchen.
- 5 Sarah ... (have) breakfast.

4 Make the sentences in exercise 3 negative.

5 Write present continuous questions. Then write short answers.

- 1 you / do / a test? ✓
- 2 your teacher / sleep? ✗
- 3 your friends / study? ✓
- 4 it / rain / today? ✗
- 5 your classmates / sing? ✗
- 6 your dad / work? ✓

### Present simple and continuous

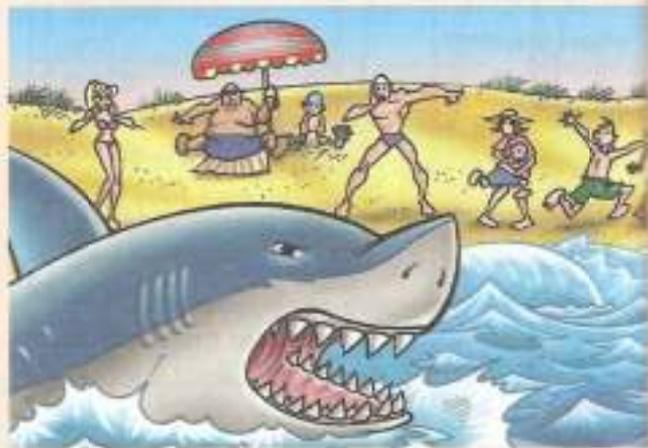
6 Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Thousands of people ... the zoo every week.  
a) are visiting      b) visit
- 2 At the moment the monkeys ... lunch.  
a) have              b) are having
- 3 They ... at two o'clock in the afternoon.  
a) usually eat      b) are usually eating
- 4 The wolves ... now.  
a) sleep              b) are sleeping
- 5 Wolves ... at night.  
a) aren't sleeping   b) don't sleep
- 6 What ... at the moment?  
a) do the tigers do   b) are the tigers doing

### Cumulative grammar 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

7 Complete the text with these words.

be live about swimming eat are die go



Great white sharks (1) ... near the coast of southern Australia. They (2) ... usually about four metres long and they've (3) ... a lot of teeth. They normally (4) ... fish and seals, but they can (5) ... very dangerous for humans too. Every year, about 30 people (6) ... in shark attacks. So, if you like (7) ... in the sea, be careful! How (8) ... going to a swimming pool instead?

# Days Out

6

## Unit contents:

**Vocabulary** Places to visit; food and drink

**Grammar** *there is / there are*; prepositions of place; countable and uncountable nouns; *a / an, some and any*

**Skills** Read a travel brochure for London  
Listen to conversations in shops and restaurants  
Write a guide for tourists  
Order food

**Across the curriculum** Geography

**Culture** England: A Day Out at the Summer Show



In Britain, people often visit London, Edinburgh and Snowdonia. Which places do people visit in your country?

## UK quiz

- How many people visit the London Eye every year?  
a) 1.5 million    b) 3.5 million    c) 5.5 million
- The 'Angel of the North' is an enormous statue that is 20 metres tall. Which city is it near?  
a) London    b) Oxford    c) Newcastle
- How long is Britain's coastline?  
a) 4500 km    b) 14 500 km    c) 40 500 km

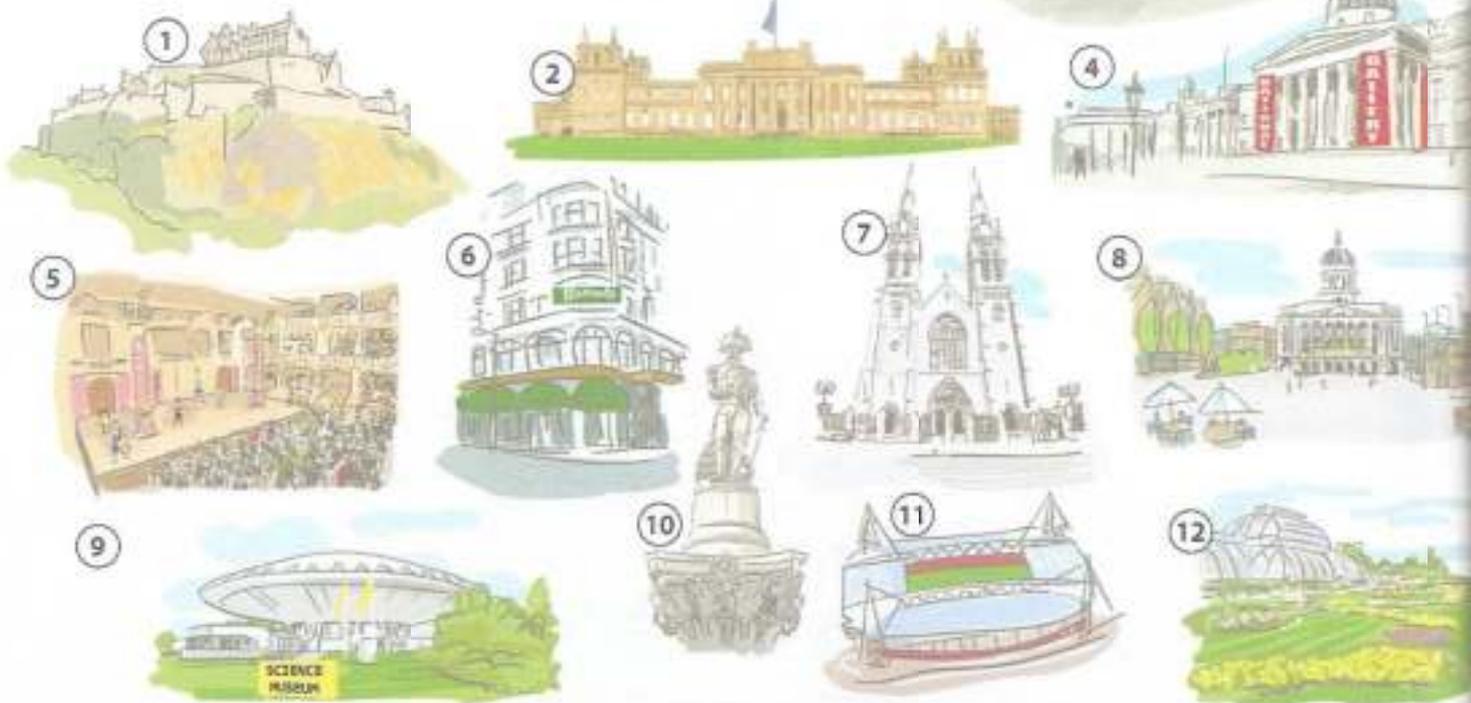


# Vocabulary 1

## Places to visit

1 Match these places with the pictures.

market department store stadium cathedral castle  
square gallery museum palace theatre garden statue



2 51 Listen and repeat.

3 Read about four places. Which pictures are they? Are they in England, Wales, Scotland or Northern Ireland?

① Edinburgh Castle is about a thousand years old. It's on a big rock, above the city.

② The Millennium Stadium (the 'Stadiwm y Mileniwm' in Welsh) is in the city of Cardiff. It's for rugby, football and other sports. There are also music concerts here.

③ St Peter's Cathedral in Belfast is about 150 years old. It's got two tall towers and a statue of Saint Peter above the door.

④ The National Gallery in London has got 2300 paintings. More than four million people visit the gallery every year.

Recycle Do you have these places in your town?

park restaurant amusement park  
shopping centre cinema station

## Pronunciation: syllable stress

a 52 Listen and repeat. Stress the correct syllable.

mar-ket mus-e-um ca-stle sta-di-um sta-tue

b 53 Listen. Have these words got two or three syllables? Which syllable is stressed?

1 cathedral            4 theatre  
2 garden              5 gallery  
3 palace

4 Your voice Which places from exercise 1 has your town got? Write sentences.

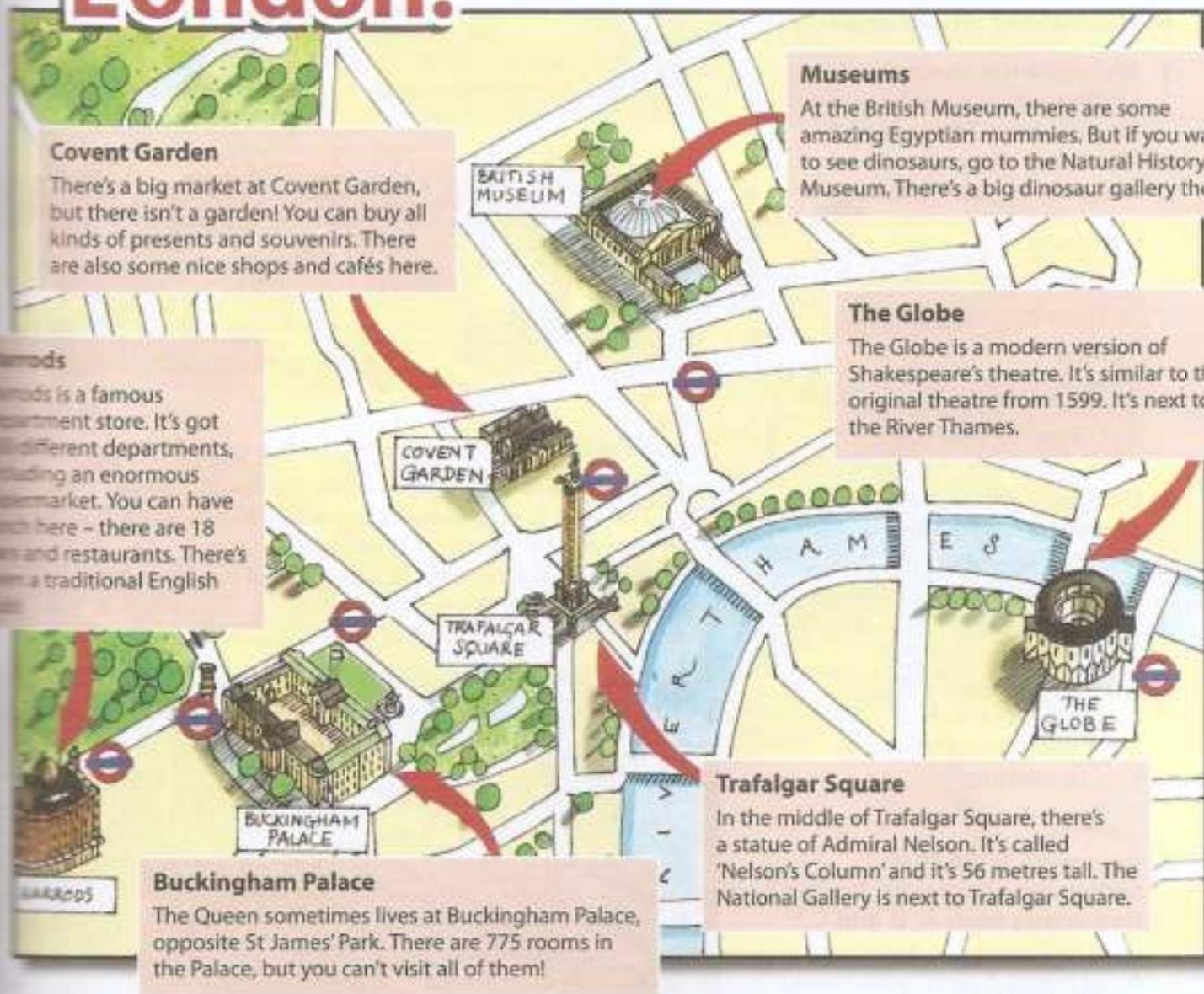
My town has got a square. It's called the Palace Square.

My town hasn't got a stadium.

Vocabulary plus → Workbook p121

# Welcome to London!

Here are some ideas of places to visit on your day out ...



## Covent Garden

There's a big market at Covent Garden, but there isn't a garden! You can buy all kinds of presents and souvenirs. There are also some nice shops and cafés here.

BRITISH MUSEUM

## Museums

At the British Museum, there are some amazing Egyptian mummies. But if you want to see dinosaurs, go to the Natural History Museum. There's a big dinosaur gallery there.

COVENT GARDEN

## The Globe

The Globe is a modern version of Shakespeare's theatre. It's similar to the original theatre from 1599. It's next to the River Thames.

TRAFALGAR SQUARE

THE GLOBE

## Trafalgar Square

In the middle of Trafalgar Square, there's a statue of Admiral Nelson. It's called 'Nelson's Column' and it's 56 metres tall. The National Gallery is next to Trafalgar Square.

BUCKINGHAM PALACE

## Buckingham Palace

The Queen sometimes lives at Buckingham Palace, opposite St James' Park. There are 775 rooms in the Palace, but you can't visit all of them!

1 Look at the map. Which places can you see in the pictures?

2 54 Read and listen. Choose the correct words.

- 1 Harrods is a **department store** / market.
- 2 There **are** / aren't Egyptian mummies at the British Museum.
- 3 Shakespeare's Globe is a **theatre** / cathedral.
- 4 There are **77** / 775 rooms in Buckingham Palace.

3 Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1 How many departments has Harrods got?
- 2 Where can you see dinosaurs in London?
- 3 Where is the Globe?
- 4 Which park is opposite Buckingham Palace?
- 5 How tall is Nelson's Column?
- 6 What can you do at Covent Garden?
- 7 Where is Nelson's Column?
- 8 Where can you buy presents in London?



# Grammar 1

## there is / there are: affirmative and negative

- 1 Translate the example sentences. Are the expressions *There is* and *There are* the same or different in your language?

<b>singular</b>
+ There's a big market.
- There isn't a garden.
<b>plural</b>
+ There are Egyptian mummies.
- There aren't dinosaurs.

- 2 Complete the sentences. Use *There is / isn't* or *There are / aren't*.

- There are old houses. ✓  
 1 ... a castle. ✓  
 2 ... interesting shops. ✓  
 3 ... a cathedral. X  
 4 ... an old church. ✓  
 5 ... department stores. X  
 6 ... a theatre. X

- 3 **Your voice** Write true sentences about your town. Use words from A, B and C.

A  
 There is a / an  
 There isn't a / an  
 There are  
 There aren't

B  
 good  
 Japanese  
 nice  
 old

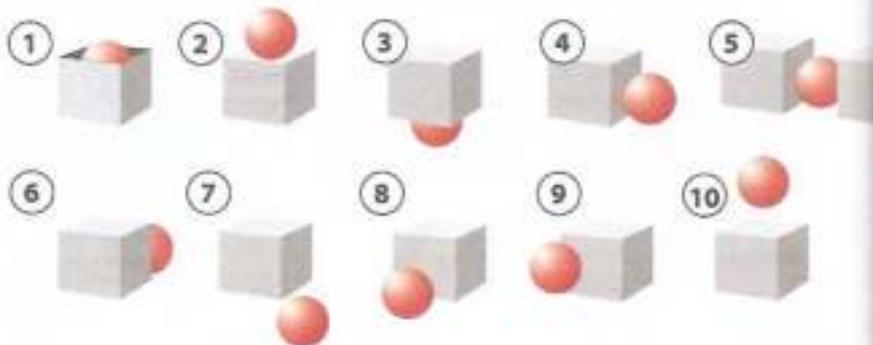
C  
 shops volcanoes  
 restaurants palace  
 cathedral beach  
 castle cafés

In my town there are good shops.

# Prepositions of place

- 4 Match the prepositions with the pictures. Then translate the prepositions into your language. What is the difference between *in front of* and *opposite*?

in on next to under above behind between  
 in front of opposite near



- 5 Look at the picture and choose the correct prepositions.

- The theatre is **opposite** / **next to** the cathedral.
- The café is **opposite** / **between** the restaurant and the department store.
- The museum is **next to** / **in front of** the cathedral.
- The beach is **in** / **near** the city.
- The statue is **in front of** / **in** the park.



# Speaking

- 6 Work in pairs. Ask and answer three questions about the picture.

- Where's the café?  
 It's ...



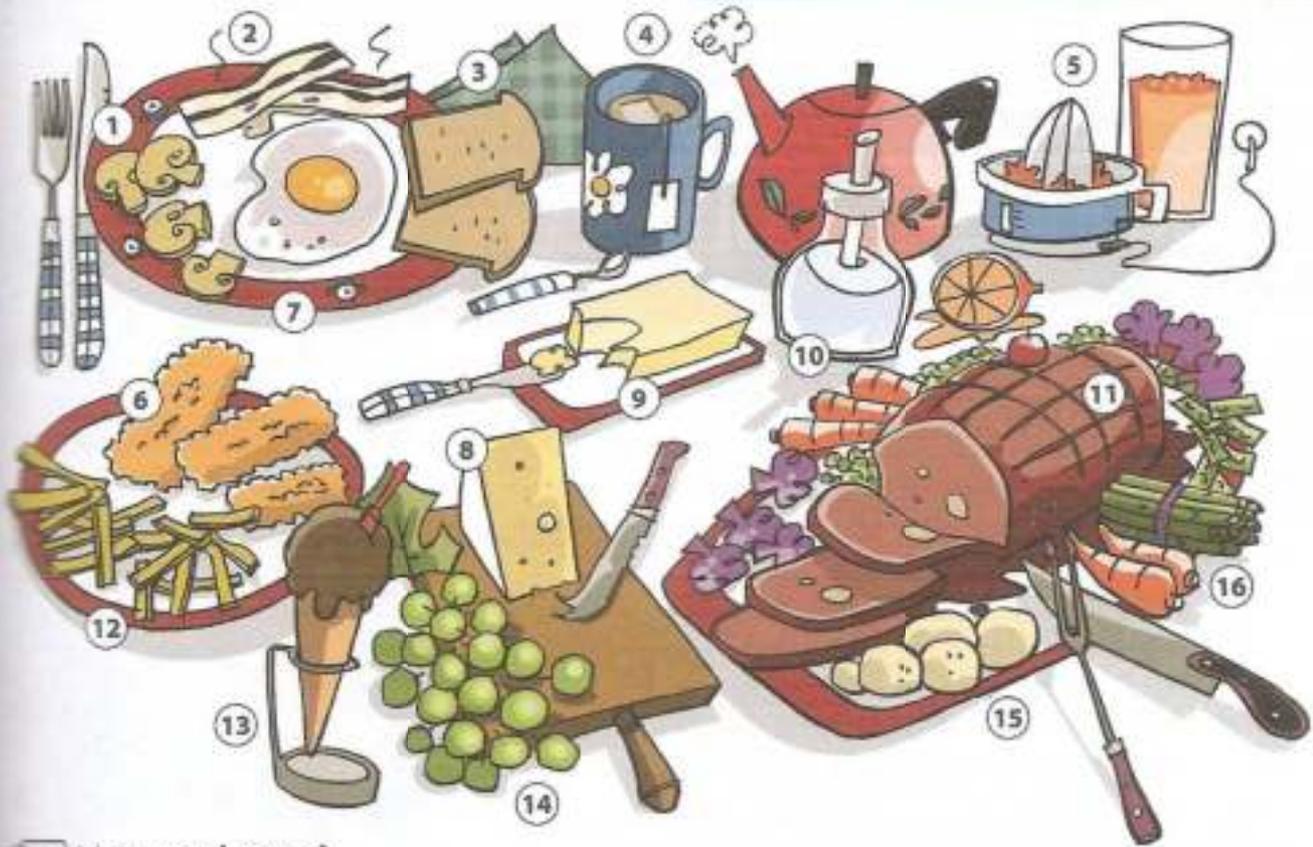
Language guide p83

## Vocabulary 2

### Food and drink

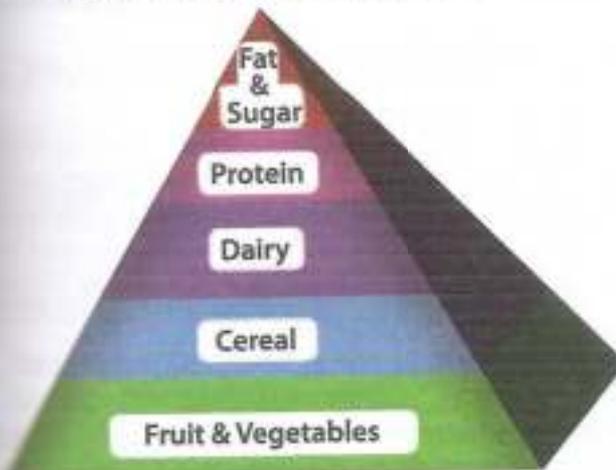
- 1 Match these words with the items in the pictures.

egg chips mushrooms toast grapes  
bacon sugar butter meat potatoes tea  
ice cream vegetables fish cheese juice



- 2 **55** Listen and repeat.

- 3 Copy and complete the food pyramid with words from exercise 1 and your own ideas.



- 4 **Four voice** Work in pairs. Ask and answer about food and drink.

- Do you like meat?  
• No, I don't!

## Listening

- 5 **56** Listen to six short conversations in shops and restaurants. Which speaker orders these things? Write the conversation number.

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1 ice cream      | 5 cola          |
| 2 cheeseburger   | 6 hot chocolate |
| 3 carrots        | 7 apples        |
| 4 fish and chips | 8 steak         |

- 6 **56** Listen again and choose the correct words.

- The customer orders **small / large** chips.
- The customer buys **red / green** apples.
- The customer buys **two / three** ice creams.
- The customers are sitting next to the **window / door**.
- The woman orders **steak / salmon**.
- The customer **wants / doesn't want** salt and vinegar.



# A Day Out at the Summer Show

- a** Every year there are summer shows in thousands of villages around England. There are lots of things to do at the shows! There are competitions for all kinds of animals, with trophies for the winning horses, cows and sheep. There are also competitions called 'sheepdog trials'. The dogs move the sheep from the field into an enclosure. They're very fast – they've only got nine minutes to do it.
- b** At the summer shows there are also competitions for flowers, vegetables and other food. There are some amazing vegetables – look at the enormous beans in the picture! There are prizes for cakes, bread, jam and marmalade, and for eggs and honey from the farm. But don't forget – the prizes are only for home-made things. You can't win if you buy them in a shop!
- c** There are also rallies of classic cars and motorbikes and competitions for vintage tractors. And there are big markets with lots of stalls, where you can buy delicious food and local crafts. Every year about 8000 people visit the shows – it's a great day out for all the family!



1 **57** Read and listen. Match pictures 1–3 with paragraphs a–c.

2 Read the text again and choose the correct answers.

- Where are the shows?
  - In cities.
  - In villages.
- Are there competitions for dogs at the show?
  - Yes, there are.
  - No, there aren't.
- Is there a competition for vegetables?
  - Yes, there is.
  - No, there isn't.

4 Are there prizes for vegetables from a supermarket?

- Yes, there are.
- No, there aren't.

5 Is there a tractor competition at the show?

- Yes, there is.
- No, there isn't.

6 How many people visit the shows every year?

- 800
- 8000

3 Talk about summer shows in England. Which competitions do you like best? Are there any village shows where you live?



## Grammar 2

### Countable and uncountable nouns

- 1 Look at the table. Then choose the correct word in sentences 1 and 2.

countable nouns	uncountable nouns
We can count countable nouns. one trophy ✓ two trophies ✓	We can't count uncountable nouns. one jam ✗ two jams ✗ jam ✓
	

- 1 **Countable / Uncountable** nouns haven't got plural forms.  
2 **Countable / Uncountable** nouns have got singular and plural forms.
- 2 Copy and complete the table with these words.

meat leeks vegetables fruit marmalade  
eggs water cakes potatoes honey

countable nouns	uncountable nouns
leeks	

- 3 Look at the food and drink words on page 77. Then, add more food and drink words to the table in exercise 2.

### a / an, some and any

- 1 We use *a / an* or numbers with singular countable nouns.  
2 We use *some* in affirmative sentences.  
3 We use *any* in negative sentences.  
4 We use *any* in questions.
- 4 Read the rules, look at the picture then choose the correct words.
- There's **a / some** fruit.
  - There isn't **any / some** chocolate.
  - There are **some / any** sandwiches.
  - There aren't **any / an** burgers.
  - Is there **a / any** juice?
  - Are there **any / a** crisps?
  - There is **a / some** water.
  - There's **a / some** banana and an orange.

- 5 Complete the sentences with *a / an, some* or *any*.

There's *some* cheese.

- Is there ... cola?
- There's ... apple.
- There isn't ... lemonade.
- There are ... biscuits.
- Is there ... cake?
- There aren't ... pizzas.

### Is there ...? / Are there ...?

- 6 Look at the examples. How do you say the bold words in your language?

**singular**

**Is there** a competition?

Yes, **there is**. / No, **there isn't**.

**plural**

**Are there** any market stalls?

Yes, **there are**. / No, **there aren't**.

- 7 **Your voice** Complete the questions. Then write short answers.

Are there **any** fish and chip shops in your country?

Yes, **there are**. / No, **there aren't**.

- ... Japanese restaurant in your town?
- ... shops near your school?
- ... supermarket near your house?
- ... statues of famous people in your town?
- ... royal palace in your city?
- ... interesting museums in your town?



## Writing dossier

### A guide for tourists

# Welcome to Dublin!

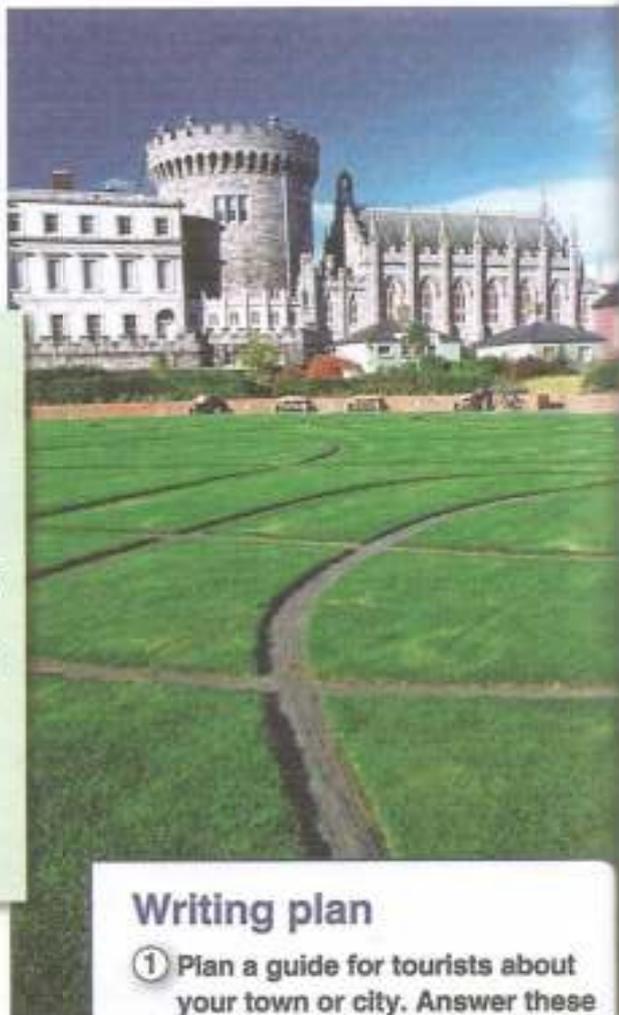
I live in Dublin – it's the capital city of Ireland. It's a great place to visit and there are also some good (1) ... here if you want to learn English.

There are lots of interesting places to visit. You can take a ghost tour from Dublin Castle, or you can go to the Star Wars exhibition. Dublin has also got (2) ..., in Phoenix Park.

There are some great places to eat in Dublin. In the city centre, there are lots of international restaurants. The pubs also serve (3) ... .

If you've got time, you can also go on (4) ... to Killiney. It's about 10 km from Dublin, and it's got a fantastic beach.

by Brónagh, 13



- 1 **58** Complete the guide for tourists with these words. Then listen and check.

a zoo traditional Irish food language schools a day trip

- 2 Look at the Language focus. How do you say *also* in your language?

#### Language focus: *also*

We use *also* to give additional information.

It can go before, after or between different verbs.

*there is / are + also*      *There are also some good restaurants.*

*can + also*                *You can also go to the beach.*

*also + other verbs*      *The pubs also serve food.*

*has + also + got*        *Dublin has also got a zoo.*

- 3 Add *also* to these sentences.

*I like fish and chips. I also like pizza.*

- 1 We often go to the beach. We go to the mountains.
- 2 I've got two sisters. I've got a brother.
- 3 They eat healthy food. They play sport.
- 4 There's a market here. There's a supermarket.
- 5 Tourists can eat here. They can drink Guinness!

### Writing plan

- ① Plan a guide for tourists about your town or city. Answer these questions.

- 1 Where is your town / city?
- 2 Why do tourists go there?
- 3 What's the best place to visit?
- 4 Are there any other places to go?
- 5 Where can visitors eat?
- 6 Where can tourists go on a day trip?

- ② Write a first version. Include this information.

- ◆ introduction to your town / city
- ◆ places to visit
- ◆ eating and drinking
- ◆ day trips

- ③ Check your writing.

- ✓ Use *there is / there are*.
- ✓ Use *also*.
- ✓ Use the places vocabulary from page 74.

- ④ Write the final version and put it in your Dossier.

# Dialogue builder

## Ordering food

1 Jack is ordering some food. Read the dialogue and complete the cost of the meal.



### Assistant

Hello, can I help you?  
It's **£2.80**.  
Anything else?  
OK. Anything to drink?

That's £ ..., please.  
Here's your change. Enjoy your meal!

### Jack

How much is a **baked potato with cheese**, please?  
OK, can I have a **baked potato**, please?  
Yes - a **cheese and tomato sandwich** for my friend.  
Yes, I'd like a **milkshake and some orange juice**, please.  
Here you are.  
Thank you.

2 **59** Listen, check and repeat. Practise your intonation.

### Money and prices

75 p = seventy-five pence    £12.00 = twelve pounds  
£1.99 = one ninety-nine

Look!

3 Look at the menu and answer the questions.

- How much is a pizza?
- How much are the chips?
- How much is a salad?
- How much is a baked potato and a mineral water?

4 Write your own dialogue. Use the menu and change the bold words in the dialogue.

5 Work in pairs. Practise your dialogue.

- Hello, can I help you?
- How much is a ...



### Useful expressions

Can I have a / an / some ..., please?  
I'd like a / an / some ..., please.  
How much is a ...?  
Anything else?  
Anything to drink?  
Enjoy your meal!

# Language Guide

## Vocabulary

### Places to visit



market



department store



stadium



cathedral



castle



square



gallery



museum



palace



theatre

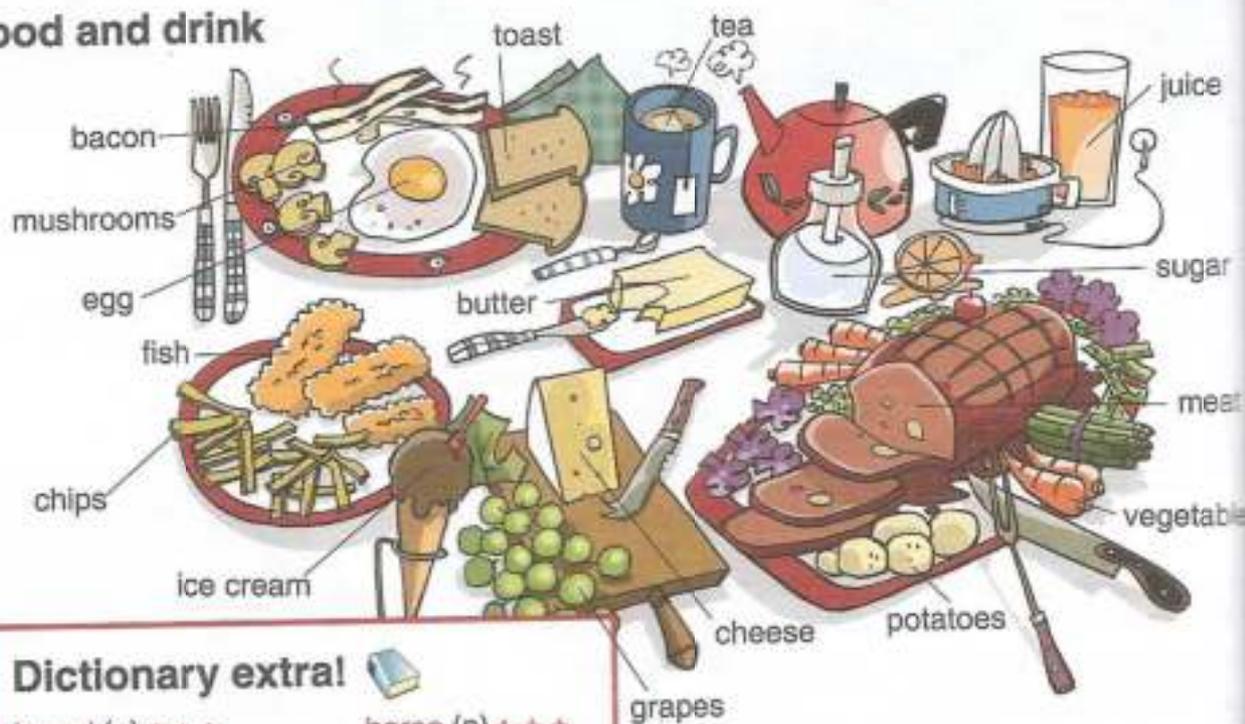


garden



statue

### Food and drink



#### Dictionary extra!

bread (n) ★★★

cake (n) ★★★

competition (n) ★★★

cow (n) ★★

department store (n) ★★

farm (n) ★★★

field (n) ★★★

horse (n) ★★★

jam (n) ★

lunch (n) ★★★

river (n) ★★★

sheep (n) ★★★

shop (n) ★★★

summer (n) ★★★

village (n) ★★★

#### Useful expressions

Can I have a/an/some ..., please?

I'd like a/an/some ..., please.

How much is a ...?

Anything else?

Anything to drink?

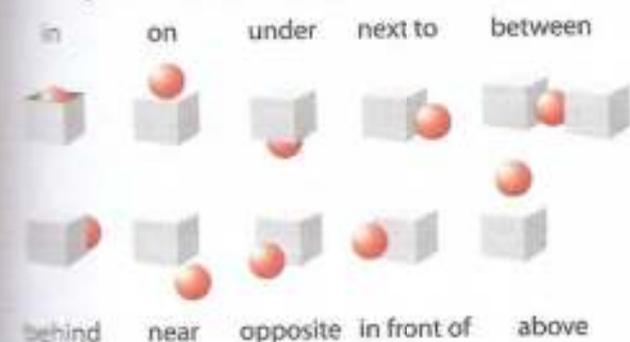
Enjoy your meal!

## Grammar

### there is / there are

affirmative	
There's (is)	a museum.
There are	two restaurants.
negative	
There isn't (is not)	a castle.
There aren't (are not)	any shops.
questions	
Is there	a palace?
Are there	any cafés?
short answers	
Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.	
Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.	

### Prepositions of place



- We use prepositions of place to say where things are.  
*The museum is opposite the Italian restaurant.*

### Countable and uncountable nouns

countable	uncountable
a potato	sugar
an egg	water
three carrots	meat

- Countable nouns have singular and plural forms.  
*potato – potatoes*  
*vegetable – vegetables*
- It isn't possible to count sugar, water or meat – they don't have plural forms.  
*sugar ✓ sugars X*  
*water ✓ waters X*
- We can count *packets of sugar, bottles of water or pieces of meat.*

### a / an, some and any

- We use *a / an* with singular countable nouns.
- We use *a* before consonant sounds.  
*a potato*  
*a tomato*  
*a bottle*
- We use *an* before vowel sounds.  
*an egg*  
*an apple*  
*an orange*
- We use *some* and *any* with uncountable nouns and with plural countable nouns.
- We use *some* in affirmative sentences, and *any* in negative sentences and questions.



Grammar exercises → Workbook p109



# Progress check

## Places

1 Complete the names of these places.



1 s \_\_\_\_\_



2 c \_\_\_\_\_



3 t \_\_\_\_\_



4 c \_\_\_\_\_



5 g \_\_\_\_\_



6 s \_\_\_\_\_

## Food and drink

2 Match the boxes to find seven more words for food and drinks.

potato

pet	gr	vege	me	su	ch
e	ate	room	ape	at	eese
mush	but	gg	table	ter	gar.

## Countable and uncountable nouns

3 Are the words in exercise 2 countable or uncountable?

countable	uncountable
potato	

## a / an, some and any

4 Complete the dialogue with *a / an, some or any*.

- A What have you got in your lunchbox?  
 B I've got (1) ... sandwich, (2) ... orange and (3) ... water.  
 A Have you got (4) ... crisps?  
 B No, I haven't. What about you?  
 A No, I haven't got (5) ... crisps or sweets. But I've got (6) ... biscuits! Do you want one?

## there is / there are

5 Look at the picture and write sentences. Use *there is / there are* or *there isn't / there aren't*.



a cathedral

There isn't a cathedral.

- 1 an aeroplane      4 two people  
 2 some shops      5 any department stores  
 3 a theatre      6 a statue

## Prepositions of place

6 Look at the picture again. Complete the sentences with these words.

in front of   in   on   above   between

- 1 There's a clothes shop ... the sports shop and the shoe shop.  
 2 The people are sitting ... the café.  
 3 The aeroplane is flying ... the shops.  
 4 The boy is ... the sports shop.  
 5 The bird is ... the statue's head.

## Cumulative grammar 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

7 Choose the correct words.

Waiter Yes, Madam. Can I (1) **to help / help** you?

Woman Yes, I'd like (2) **some / any** tomato soup, please.

Waiter I'm sorry, we haven't got (3) **some / any** tomato soup today. We (4) **'ve got / 's got** some delicious chicken soup.

Woman OK, then. Chicken soup is fine.

Later ...

Woman Waiter, (5) **there's / there are** a fly in my soup!

Waiter Really? What (6) **'s it doing / does it do**?

Woman (7) **Is / It's** swimming in my bowl!

Waiter Don't worry, madam. It (8) **don't / does** cost extra.



# Revision 2

## Vocabulary

Listen to your teacher's instructions.

### START



**A**  
a school subject



**B**  
an animal -  
polar ...



**C**  
a place



**D**  
Can you ...?

**E**  
The WWF  
protects ...  
animals.



**F**  
Birds can ...



**G**  
food

**H**  
the opposite of 'love'



**I**  
food



**J**  
drink



**K**  
an Australian  
animal

**L**  
the adverb of loud

**M**  
a school subject



**N**  
Who do you  
sit ... to?

**R**  
Can you  
... a bike?

**Q**  
an  
adjective



**P**  
Can you ... an  
instrument?



**O**  
a bird

**T**  
an animal



**U**  
always, ... ,  
sometimes,  
often

**V**  
They're  
good for  
you!



She can ...

**X**  
an instrument



**W**  
a mammal



**Y**  
the opposite  
of old

**Z**  
You can see  
animals here.

### FINISH

## Reading

- 1 Read the text quickly. Is the author enjoying the festival?

It's that time of year again! It's the last weekend in July and our festival fan Jessie Hayes is at Charlton Park in the south of England. Here she tells us all about the Wonderful World of WOMAD ...



## Festival Update

Every year, the WOMAD Festival (World of Music and Dance) brings us a great selection of music and culture from around the world, with shows from Europe, Africa, Asia, the USA and Australia. There are more than 50 bands, so it isn't always easy to choose! At the moment I'm trying to decide between the Spanish flamenco band Chambao and the Tanzanian acrobats The Black Eagles. Or shall I go to a samba class?

In addition to the concerts, there are lots of different activities including film shows, art and drama workshops, drumming and circus skills. There's a big amusement park too, and there are lots of places to eat everything from curry to vegeburgers.

This is a fantastic summer festival and I definitely recommend it. That flamenco band is starting now so I'm going! Don't forget, if you miss the festival here in the UK, there are more WOMADs in Spain, Australia, Italy, and New Zealand!

- 2 Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1 Where does the WOMAD festival take place in Britain?
- 2 What does WOMAD mean?
- 3 In addition to concerts, what other activities are there?
- 4 Are there places to eat at the festival?
- 5 Does the author decide to watch Chambao or The Black Eagles?
- 6 In which other countries are there WOMAD festivals?

## Listening

- 3 **60** Listen to a TV report from the WOMAD festival in Cáceres, Spain. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 When is the festival in Cáceres?  
a) March  
b) May  
c) August
- 2 Where does the festival take place?  
a) in a park  
b) at a stadium  
c) in the city centre
- 3 How much does it cost to go to the festival?  
a) It's free.  
b) It isn't expensive.  
c) It's very expensive.
- 4 How many bands are there?  
a) 12  
b) 25  
c) 50
- 5 What is Paul waiting to see?  
a) a singer from Cuba  
b) dancers from India  
c) a band from Africa
- 6 When does the festival finish?  
a) on Friday evening  
b) on Saturday afternoon  
c) on Sunday morning

## Speaking

- 4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Do you ever go to concerts?
- How often do you listen to music?
- What are your favourite bands?
- Do you know any world music?
- Do you download music from the Internet?

## Project

You're going to plan a music festival for your school or your town. Listen to your teacher's instructions.

## Grammar

### Present simple and continuous

- 1 Complete the conversation with the present simple or continuous form of the verbs in brackets.



- Ben Hi Sarah! Where are you?  
 Sarah I'm at the WOMAD festival with my aunt and uncle. They (1) ... (come) here every year. It's great!  
 Ben Fantastic! What (2) ... (you / do) at the moment?  
 Sarah I (3) ... (listen) to a band called Latino Funk. They (4) ... (play) a great song! In fact, I can't hear you very well ...  
 Ben (5) ... (you / want) to call me later?  
 Sarah Yeah, OK. I (6) ... (think) this band (7) ... (finish) at half past seven. Shall I call you then?  
 Ben Great. I (8) ... (not go) out this evening. Have fun!  
 Sarah Thanks! Talk to you later.

### Question forms

- 2 Write questions for these answers.

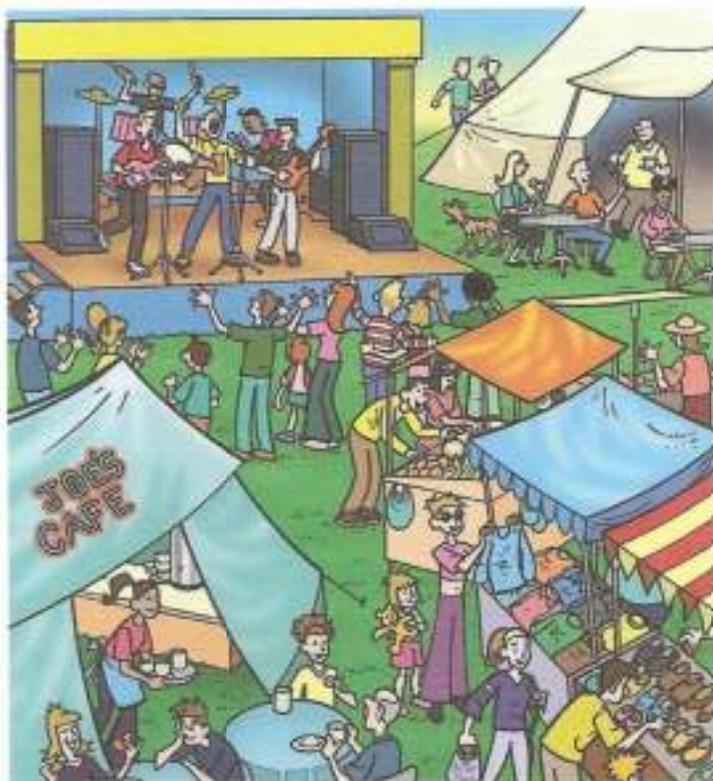
- Where ... tonight?  
Lily Allen is playing in Manchester tonight.
- Where ... live?  
She lives in London.
- ... an instrument?  
Yes, I can. I can play the flute.
- ... in your town?  
Yes, there is. There's a music festival in August.
- ... in your English class?  
Yes, we do. We sometimes listen to English songs.
- What ... at the moment?  
At the moment we're doing a grammar exercise.

### there is / there are; a, some and any

- 3 Look at the picture. Write sentences using *there is / there are* and *a, some or any*.

musicians ✓  
 There are some musicians.

- market ✓
- cafés ✓
- department store X
- animal ✓
- concert ✓
- people ✓



- 4 Choose the correct words.

- I love **listen** / **listening** to music.
- Shakira is my favourite singer. Do you like **her** / **she**?
- My sister can **to play** / **play** the violin.
- At the moment we **isn't** / **aren't** listening to a song.
- My best friend can sing very **well** / **good**.
- She **sings** / **is singing** in a band every weekend.
- Are** / **Is** there a concert here tonight?
- There aren't **some** / **any** restaurants in my village.

# English sketches

61 Listen and read. Then act out the sketch in groups.

## Characters

Girls Roxy, Lily

Boys Matt, Cal

Girl or boy Nicky

### The start of the school day

**Roxy** Hey guys, we're going on a school trip.

**Matt** What? An excursion?

**Lily** Where are we going?

**Roxy** Mr Green says we can choose! There's the park ...

**Nicky** The park! Oh, can we get some ice cream! Yes, let's go to the park! I *love* playing football, and there's a little train, and ...

**Matt** Nicky, the park is too near school. Let's go on a *big* school trip. We can take our lunch and spend the day there.

**Roxy** Oh no, I hate sandwiches ...

**Cal** What about going to the city?

**Roxy** Mmm. I'd like to go to the fashion museum.

**Lily** Good idea!

**Cal** *Good idea?* Do you really want to go to a fashion museum?

**Lily** It's opposite the science museum and next to the natural history museum.

**Cal** Ahh!

**Nicky** I vote for Regent's Park. There's a zoo, and a canal and boats and there's ...

**Roxy** Hey, woah! This is a *school* trip! Our parents are paying for it, Mr Green is organizing it, *I'm* responsible for ideas ... and we're not millionaires.

**Lily** But the zoo's a good idea. There are some beautiful animals – they've got pandas! I love pandas ...

**Roxy** Do you? Why? They're just big, Chinese teddy bears ...

**Lily** Because they eat slowly, they move calmly ... they're totally peaceful.

**Roxy** Hmm. I prefer snow leopards. They're ...

**Cal** ... similar to you, MR. They dress well, but they're cold and dangerous ...

**Nicky** Hahaha!

**Matt** Mr Green's here! Let's talk later.

### On the bus

**Nicky** [*singing loudly*] We're going to the zoo, zoo, zoo, how about you, you, you; You can come too, too, too ...

**Cal** Typical Nicky! (S)He *always* sings on the bus!

**Lily** Ohh. Well, why don't we sing together? Do you know any songs by Rihanna, Nicky? Or McFly?

**Cal** What are we doing when we get to the zoo, MR?

**Roxy** First, we're going to a science class about the animals and their diet.

**Nicky** What do tigers eat in a zoo? Tourists?

**Roxy** No, Nicky! Then we're watching the animals have their lunch. We're helping with the eagles and owls!

**Matt** My *favourite* animals! I love owls, they're intelligent and mysterious.

**Cal** [*to himself*] That's a good idea. I can buy Lily an owl in the shop; she's like a beautiful owl.

**Lily** [*to Matt*] I hate owls. They eat other animals. They fly silently and eat baby rabbits, mice ...

**Cal** [*to himself*] Oh well. No owl then.

**Nicky** Look, we're here! Let's go!

### At the picnic area

**Cal** Where shall we sit? Over here?

**Matt** Yes. The others are coming in a minute. Nicky's buying some ice cream.

**Lily** Is (s)he *only* having ice cream?

**Matt** No, look, (s)he's carrying a plastic box of salad too.

**Cal** My sister's got Mexican food! And a mango for pudding!

**Matt** Roxy, can I try some of your lunch, please?

**Roxy** Mm. Haven't you got your own?

**Matt** Cheese and ketchup sandwiches – my brother's favourite. He's got my sandwiches today and I've got his.

**Roxy** Yeuch! You can't eat *those*! Let's give them to the gorillas.

**Matt** Thanks, Roxy. You're a star.

**Nicky** Hm-hm! Roxy's giving Matt some of her lunch! [*laughs*]

**Lily** Can you see my lunch bag? I can't find it.

**Cal** Is it in the shop? What's in it?

**Lily** Egg sandwiches, juice, some fruit ...

**Roxy** Grapes and bananas?

**Lily** Yes, there are ...

**Roxy** And some chocolate?

**Lily** Yeeesss. There is ... Why?

**Roxy** Look. Your bag's over there ...

**Lily** The orang-utans are eating my lunch! Oh no!

# Look into the Past

# 7

## Unit contents:

**Vocabulary** History makers; irregular verbs

**Grammar** be: past simple; there was / there were; past simple affirmative

**Skills** Read about the wonders of the Ancient World

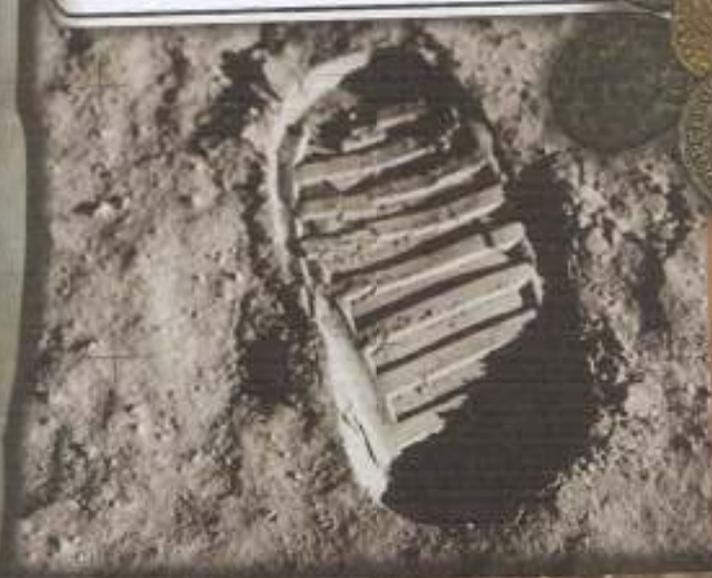
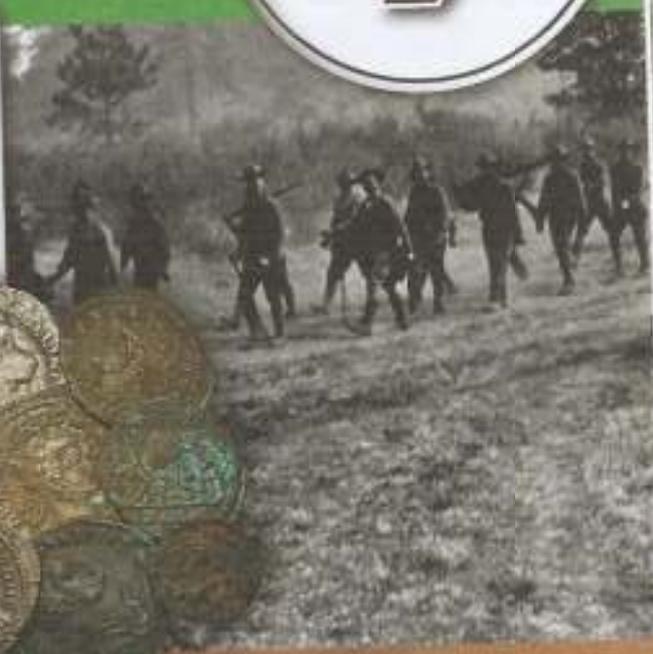
Listen to an audio guide

Write a biography

Ask for information

**Across the curriculum** History

**Culture** Wales: Castles and Dragons



## History quiz

- 1 Who was Tutankhamun?  
a) a Greek god   b) a Roman soldier   c) an Egyptian king
- 2 Where is Stonehenge?  
a) Scotland   b) England   c) Wales
- 3 When was Shakespeare born?  
a) 1066   b) 1564   c) 1823
- 4 When did an astronaut first walk on the moon?  
a) 1890   b) 1969   c) 2001

I like visiting museums.  
Are there any museums in  
your town?



# Vocabulary 1

Recycle Write the dates and years.

1/4/08 the first of April two thousand and eight  
1 1992 2 12/12/02 3 1763 4 5/9/99

## History makers

1 Match these words with the pictures. Which two words are not in the pictures?

writer painter explorer astronaut politician  
scientist inventor sculptor director architect  
king and queen composer



2 62 Listen and repeat.

3 Do the quiz.

## Famous Europeans

- 1 Pedro Duque is a Spanish ... He's from Madrid.  
a) architect    b) astronaut    c) director
- 2 JK Rowling is a British ... Harry Potter is her creation.  
a) politician    b) explorer    c) writer
- 3 Nicolas Sarkozy is a French ...  
a) politician    b) painter    c) king
- 4 Mozart was an Austrian ... His operas are famous.  
a) sculptor    b) composer    c) scientist
- 5 Christopher Colombus was an Italian ... Fernando and Isabella were his patrons.  
a) inventor    b) composer    c) explorer
- 6 Albert Einstein was a German ... He was a Nobel Prize winner.  
a) architect    b) scientist    c) politician

4 63 Listen and check your answers.

### Word families

We often use the suffixes *-er* or *-or* to describe a person's job.  
write → writer  
act → actor

Look

5 Copy and complete the table with words from exercise 1.

verb	person
write	writer
invent	
explore	
direct	

6 **Your voice** Imagine you are a famous person. Work in pairs. Ask and answer to guess the person.

- Are you a writer?  
• No, I'm not.
- Are you from France?  
• Yes, I am.
- Are you ...?

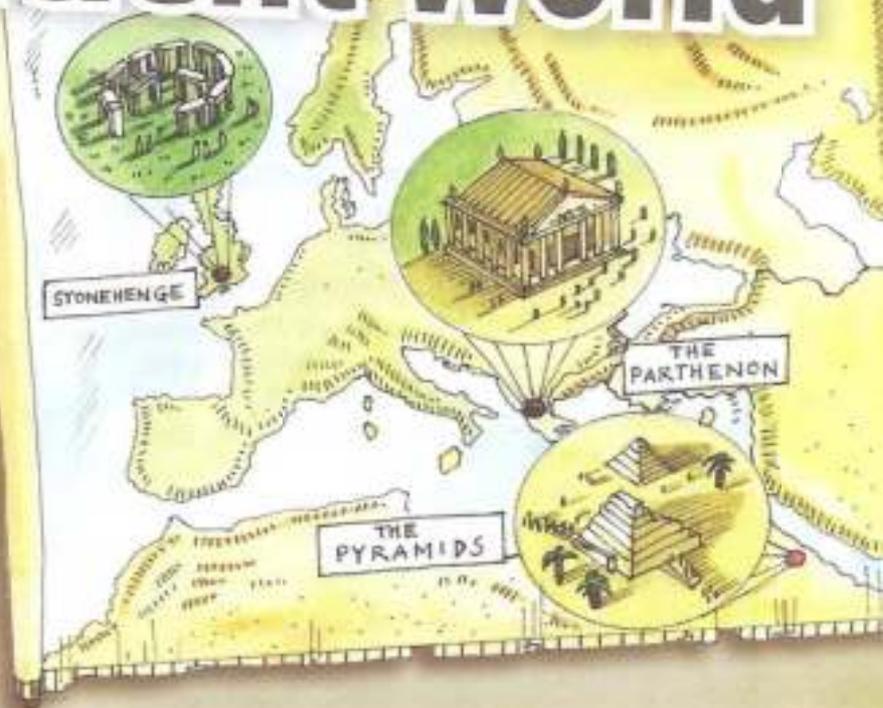
Vocabulary plus → Workbook p122

# Wonders of the Ancient World

7

The prehistoric monument of Stonehenge is near Salisbury in the south of England. Stone Age people started to build the stone circle in 3100 BC, and they used it for religious ceremonies. The enormous stones were originally from Wales, and people carried them 400 km. How? Nobody knows. There weren't any vehicles in those days – perhaps people carried them down the river on boats!

Tutankhamun was a very young king – they called him the 'boy king'. He was only 18 when he died, and the Ancient Egyptians buried his mummy in a tomb in the Valley of the Kings. His tomb was full of gold and treasure. In it, there were also clothes, shoes, and 32 model boats – the Ancient Egyptians believed that people needed boats to travel to the afterlife.



In Ancient Greece, there were lots of temples for all the different gods, such as Zeus, Aphrodite and Apollo. The Parthenon in Athens was a temple for Athena. She was the goddess of war and the patron of Athens. Today the Parthenon is in ruins, because an enormous explosion destroyed the original temple in 1687. Now it is still in danger – from the effects of traffic pollution!

1 **64** Read and listen. Match paragraphs 1–3 with the places on the map.

2 Read the text again. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 Stonehenge was a religious monument.
- 2 They started building Stonehenge in the eighteenth century.
- 3 The pyramids were Egyptian tombs.
- 4 There were model aeroplanes in Tutankhamun's tomb.
- 5 Athena was the goddess of love.
- 6 There were a lot of gods in Ancient Greece.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1 Where is Stonehenge?
- 2 Where are the stones from originally?
- 3 Who was Tutankhamun?
- 4 Why were boats important in Ancient Egypt?
- 5 Where is the Parthenon?
- 6 Why is the Parthenon in danger now?

4 Check the meaning of these verbs. Then find the past forms in the text.

start use carry bury  
believe need destroy

start – started



# Grammar 1

## be: past simple

- 1 Look at the tables. Then complete the sentences with *was* or *were*.

affirmative		negative	
I	was	I	wasn't
He / She / It	was	He / She / It	wasn't
We / You / They	were	We / You / They	weren't

questions	short answers
Was I ...?	Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.
Were you ...?	Yes, you were. / No, you weren't.
Was he / she / it ...?	Yes, he was. / No, she wasn't.
Were you / they ...?	Yes, we were. / No, they weren't.

- Tutankhamun ... an Egyptian king.
  - Zeus and Apollo ... Greek gods.
- 2 Write two sentences using *was* / *were* and *wasn't* / *weren't*. Think carefully about your answers.
- Elizabeth I Spanish / English queen  
Elizabeth I wasn't a Spanish queen. She was an English queen.
- Cervantes writer / director
  - Ivan the Terrible and Peter the Great Polish / Russian tsars
  - Walt Disney director / actor
  - Marco Polo and Vasco da Gama astronauts / explorers
  - Michelangelo sculptor / politician
- 3 Complete the questions with *was* or *were*.

### The Ancient World – are you an expert?

- What ... Stonehenge?
- Where ... Queen Nefertiti and King Amenhotep from?
- What ... the capital of Ancient Greece?
- Who ... Pythagoras and Socrates?
- Where ... the first Olympic Games?
- Who ... Julius Caesar?

- 4  65 Guess the answers, then listen and check.

## there was / there were

- 5 Translate the sentences. Are the singular and plural forms the same or different in your language?

### singular

There was a lot of treasure in Tutankhamun's tomb.  
There wasn't a real boat.

### plural

There were 32 model boats.  
There weren't any model aeroplanes!

- 6 Complete the sentences with *there was* / *were* (✓) or *there wasn't* / *weren't* (X).



In a typical Roman house, there were usually two or three rooms. (1) ... (X) a bathroom, but (2) ... (✓) public baths in every town. (3) ... (✓) usually a garden next to the house and (4) ... (✓) vegetables and fruit trees there. Some Roman houses were also shops or offices, but (5) ... (X) any computers in Roman times!

- 7 Look at the questions and answers. How is the word order different?

### questions and short answers

Was there treasure in Tutankhamun's tomb?  
Yes, there was. / No, there wasn't.  
Were there mummies in the Pyramids?  
Yes, there were. / No, there weren't.

- 8 Complete the questions with *was there* or *were there*. Then write true answers.

In the last century ...  
were there any World Wars?  
Yes, there were.

- ... a nuclear bomb?
- ... any great inventions?
- ... a Roman invasion?
- ... any dinosaurs in the world?
- ... a civil war in Russia?

## Vocabulary 2

### Irregular verbs

- 1 Check the meaning of these verbs. Then find the past forms in the timeline below. Which two verbs are not in the timeline?

fly lose win become have do go wear  
take make write build

- 2 **66** Listen, check and repeat.

fly – flew

**Look!**

Find the past form of these verbs.

swim eat find drink leave see

- 3 Look at the 20th century timeline. Read and find the names of ...

two inventors two explorers  
two astronauts a writer

- 4 Read the information in the timeline again. Answer the questions.

- Who were Orville and Wilbur Wright?
- What disaster was there in 1912?
- Who were the Allies?
- Were there any CDs in 1960?
- How many Harry Potter books are there?



## In the 20th century ...

**1903**

The American inventors Orville and Wilbur Wright flew the first aeroplane. They were in the air for 12 seconds!

**1945**

The Allies won the Second World War. The Allies were Britain, France, the United States and the Soviet Union.

**1969**

Nell Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin went to the moon. They wore special clothes and they took photographs.

**1997**

The British writer JK Rowling wrote the first of seven Harry Potter books.

**1900s**

**1910s**

**1920s**

**1930s**

**1940s**

**1950s**

**1960s**

**1970s**

**1980s**

**1990s**

**1912**

1,500 people lost their lives on the Titanic.

**1953**

Edmund Hillary and Sherpa Tenzing became the first explorers to climb Mount Everest.

**1979**

Sony and Philips made the first CDs.

**1997**

American scientists built the Pathfinder robot. It went to Mars.

## Listening

7

- 5 **67** Listen to the audioguide from the Titanic Museum. Complete the sentences with these numbers and dates.

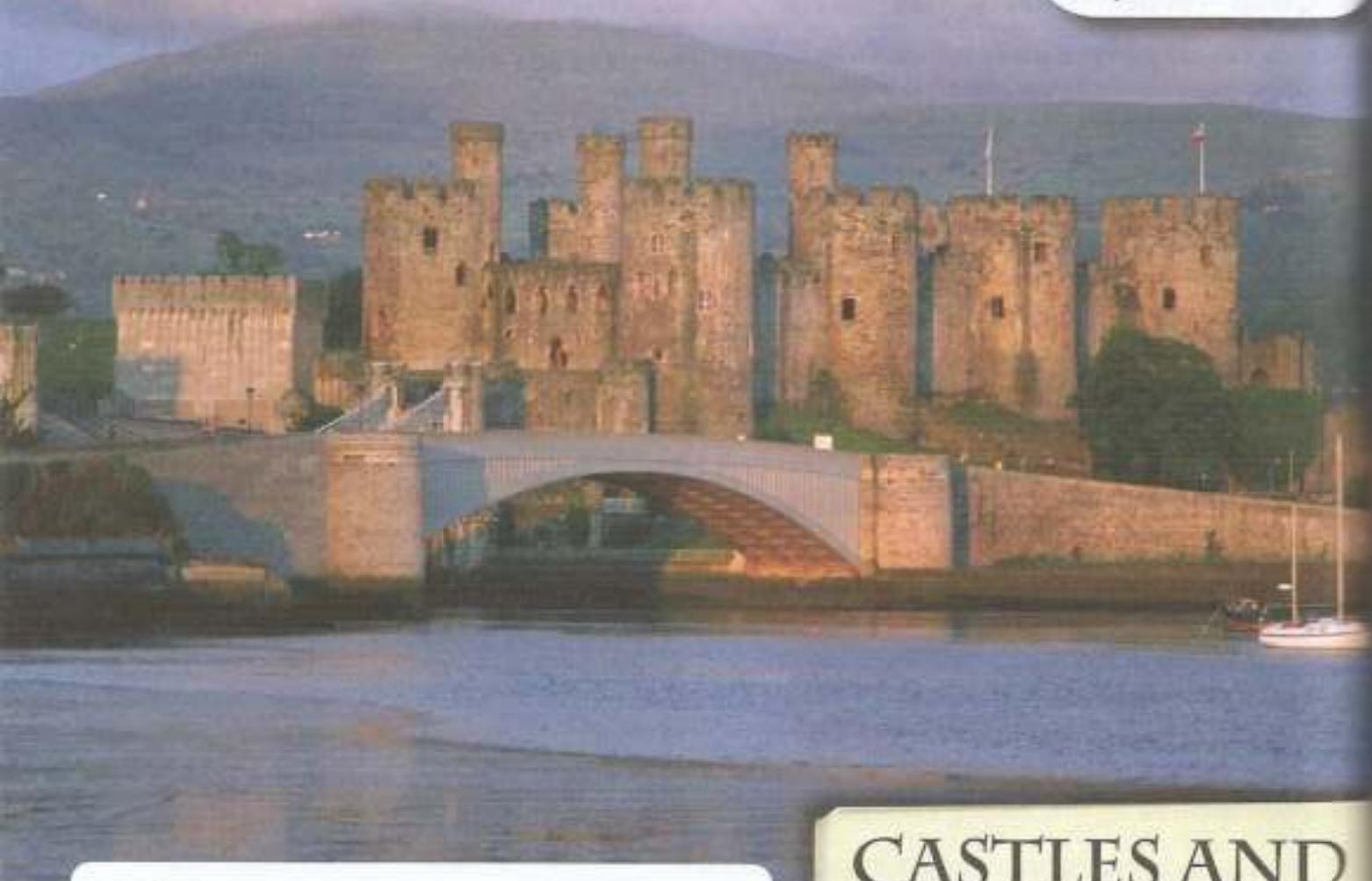
2,223 3rd 4 1912 1985 1,517

- The Titanic began her journey to New York on 10th April, ...
- There were ... people on board.
- The poor people travelled in ... class.
- They found the Titanic under the sea in ...
- Now, the ship is ... km under the surface of the ocean.
- ... people died in the disaster.



- 6 **67** Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- Lucy Rothes was a **first / second** class passenger.
- They built the Titanic in **Belfast / Dublin**.
- The Titanic hit an iceberg on **14th April / May**.
- The ship broke into **two / three** parts.
- The ship had **20 / 50** lifeboats.
- Lucy Rothes **survived / died**.

**1** **Read and listen. Answer the questions.**

- 1 How many castles are there in Wales?
- 2 What is the name of the Welsh flag?
- 3 Which countries have a dragon on their flag?

**2** **Are these sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.**

- 1 King Edward invaded Wales in 1292.
- 2 King Edward built 500 castles.
- 3 In Medieval Wales, people painted the castles red.
- 4 King Arthur carried a flag with a white dragon.
- 5 Merlin made a prophecy about a battle between two dragons.

**3** **Your voice** **Answer the questions.**

- 1 What colour is your country's flag?
- 2 Are there any castles in your country?
- 3 Are they similar to the Welsh castles?
- 4 Are there any myths about dragons in your country?

## CASTLES AND DRAGONS

There are more than 500 castles in Wales. In 1282, the English king, Edward I, invaded Wales. He built 12 castles between 1282 and 1292. Caernarfon Castle became King Edward's palace. He lived there with his family. In Medieval times, people painted the castles white. But the castles aren't white and lots of them are ruins – some are just a wall!

The Welsh flag is green and white with a red dragon, called 'Y Ddraig Goch' in Welsh. Wales and Bhutan are the only countries in the world with a dragon on the flag! There are lots of Welsh myths about dragons. In one myth, King Arthur carried a flag with a red dragon. Merlin made a prophecy about a battle between a red dragon (Wales) and a white dragon (England). The red dragon won.



## Grammar 2

### Past simple affirmative: regular verbs

1 Look at the sentences. What is the past simple ending for regular verbs?

- a) He lived there with his family.  
b) People painted the castles white.

2 Look at the spelling rules on page 99. Complete the sentences with the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

In Medieval times ...

- rich people ... (live) in castles and palaces.
- servants ... (tidy) their houses for them.
- they ... (shop) for food at the market.
- sometimes, enemies ... (attack) the castles.
- a lot of soldiers ... (die) in the attacks.
- the rich people usually ... (survive).

### Past simple affirmative: regular and irregular verbs

3 Check the meaning of these verbs. Are they

build paint invade become live  
carry have win see start

regular or irregular? Complete the table.

regular	irregular
paint - painted	build - built

4 69 Listen and check.

5 Complete the text with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Last weekend we visited Castell Coch in Wales. I (1) ... (get up) very early and I (2) ... (travel) there in the car with my family. We (3) ... (arrive) at about half past ten, and we (4) ... (explore) all the rooms in the castle. Then we (5) ... (have) lunch in the café and I (6) ... (buy) some postcards and souvenirs in the shop. After that we (7) ... (go) to the city of Cardiff. It (8) ... (be) a great day!



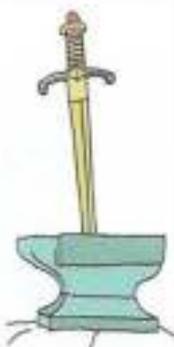
6 Choose the correct answers.

### The Legend of King Arthur

Arthur became king when he (1) **were** / **was** / **had** 15 years old. His friend Merlin, a wizard, (2) **give** / **gives** / **gave** him a magic sword called Excalibur. With Excalibur, Arthur (3) **won** / **lose** / **win** many battles and he (4) **were** / **is** / **was** a good king.

He (5) **build** / **builds** / **built** a palace at Camelot, and later he married Princess Guinevere. For many years, Arthur and Guinevere (6) **were** / **is** / **was** very happy together.

At the palace there was a round table, and all Arthur's knights met there. People (7) **call** / **called** / **calls** them 'the Knights of the Round Table', and they (8) **have** / **do** / **had** a lot of adventures. They fought dragons, and they (9) **look** / **looks** / **looked** for treasure called the 'Holy Grail'. In the end, Arthur's evil nephew Mordred (10) **killed** / **kill** / **kills** the king. The legend says that Arthur died on the Isle of Avalon.



### Pronunciation: [t] [d] [ɪd]

a 70 Listen and repeat.

[t] or [d]	[ɪd]
watched	wanted
played	shouted

b 71 Listen. Add these verbs to the table.

visited arrived started lived liked waited

## Speaking

7 Think of an excursion you went on. Write sentences using these verbs.

Last month I went to Rostov. I ...

go get up have lunch see buy like

8 Listen to your partner. Then tell the class.

Grisha went to Rostov. He ...



Language guide p99

# Writing dossier

## A biography

### Michelangelo

Michelangelo was a sculptor, painter and architect. He was born in Tuscany in 1475.

Michelangelo became a painter at the age of 13. When he was 21, he went to Rome and made his first sculpture, the Pieta. After that he came to Florence and made the famous statue David. Later, he painted the Sistine Chapel in Rome.

You can see Michelangelo's works in Florence and in Rome. My favourite is the Sistine Chapel. It's very popular with tourists!

by Sabina (Florence)



### 1 72 Read and listen to the biography and answer the questions.

- 1 Where was Michelangelo born?
- 2 What were his famous works?
- 3 What is the writer's favourite work?

### 2 Look at the Language focus. Translate the time connectors into your language.

#### Language focus: time connectors

Michelangelo was born *in* 1475.

He became a painter *at the age of* 13.

*When* he was 21, he went to Rome.

*After that* he came to Florence.

*Later*, he painted the Sistine Chapel.

### 3 Read about Leonardo da Vinci. Choose the correct time connectors.

Leonardo da Vinci was born (1) **when** / **In** 1452. He was an artist, scientist and inventor. (2) **At the age of** / **After that** 15 he went to Florence. (3) **When** / **Later**, he lived in Milan. (4) **At the age of** / **When** he was 50, he painted the Mona Lisa. (5) **After that** / **In** he went to France and lived at the King's palace.

### Writing plan

#### ① Plan a biography of a famous artist from history. Use the Internet or an encyclopaedia to find answers to these questions.

- 1 What was his / her job?
- 2 Where was he / she born?
- 3 Where did he / she live?
- 4 What were his / her famous works?
- 5 Where can you see his / her works now?
- 6 What is your favourite work?

#### ② Write a first version. Include the information.

- ✦ introduction, date and place of birth
- ✦ life and famous works
- ✦ places or things you can see related to this person

#### ③ Check your writing.

- ✓ Use time connectors.
- ✓ Check the past tense verbs.
- ✓ Use the vocabulary from page 93.

#### ④ Write the final version and put it in your Dossier.

# Dialogue builder

## Asking for information

- 1 **73** Megan is at a museum. Listen and complete the dialogue.



### Assistant

Hello. Can I help you?  
 It's over there, (1) ... **the Greek room**. Have you got  
 a gallery plan?  
 It's (2) ... Here you are.  
 Yes, there is. Look, it's here.  
 At (3) ...  
 You're welcome. Enjoy your visit!

### Megan

Yes, where's **the Egyptian Gallery**, please?  
 No, I haven't. How much is it?  
 Oh, thanks. Is there a **shop** here?  
 Great, thanks. What time does the museum close?  
 OK. Thanks for your help.

- 2 **73** Listen again and repeat. Practise your intonation.

- 3 Imagine you are visiting the British Museum. Look at the information and prepare a new dialogue. Change the bold words in the dialogue.



## BRITISH MUSEUM

London

Free entry

10:00 – 17:30 (Sat – Wed)

10:00 – 20:30 (Thur – Fri)

shop • café • restaurant

Gallery 18: The Parthenon



### Useful expressions

Where's the ..., please?  
 Is there a ... here?  
 Here you are.  
 Thanks for your help.  
 You're welcome.

- 4 Work in pairs. Practise your dialogue.

- Hello, can I help you?
- Yes, where's ...

# Language Guide

## Vocabulary

### History makers



writer



painter



explorer



politician



scientist



inventor



sculptor



director



king and  
queen



composer



astronaut



architect

### Irregular verbs

become – became  
build – built  
do – did  
drink – drank  
eat – ate  
find – found  
fly – flew  
go – went  
have – had

leave – left  
lose – lost  
make – made  
see – saw  
swim – swam  
take – took  
wear – wore  
win – won  
write – wrote



The Ming Dynasty built the Great Wall of China.

### Dictionary extra!

ancient (n) ★★★	god (n) ★
battle (n) ★★★	goddess (n)
believe (v) ★★★	gold (n) ★★★
boat (n) ★★★	mummy (n)
bury (v) ★★	ruin (n) ★
destroy (v) ★★★	war (n) ★★★
explosion (n) ★★	

### Useful expressions

Where's the ..., please?  
Is there a ... here?  
Here you are.  
Thanks for your help.  
You're welcome.

## Grammar

### be: past simple

<b>affirmative</b>	
I/He/She/It	was
We/You/They	were
<b>negative</b>	
I/He/She/It	wasn't
We/You/They	weren't
<b>questions</b>	
Was	I/he/she/it ...?
Were	we/you/they ...?
<b>short answers</b>	
Yes, I / he / she / it was.	
No, we / you / they weren't.	

- We use *was / wasn't* with *I, he, she* and *it*. We use *were / weren't* with *you, we* and *they*.

### there was / there were

<b>singular</b>
There was / wasn't a castle. Was there a castle? Yes, there was. / No, there wasn't.
<b>plural</b>
There were / weren't two castles. Were there two castles? Yes, there were. / No, there weren't.

### Past simple affirmative

- We use the past simple to talk about events in the past.
- All persons are the same.  
*I / You / He / She / It / We / They studied English last year.*

<b>spelling rules</b>	
most regular verbs: add -ed	<i>started</i> → <i>started</i>
regular verbs ending in -e, add -d	<i>like</i> → <i>liked</i>
regular verbs ending in consonant + -y: change -y to -i and add -ed	<i>carry</i> → <i>carried</i>
regular verbs ending in consonant, vowel, consonant: double the final consonant	<i>stop</i> → <i>stopped</i>

- For irregular verbs, see Irregular verbs list, Student's Book page 160.
- The pronunciation of the past simple of regular verbs changes, depending on the spelling of the verb:
  - [t] when the verb ends in an unvoiced sound, the past simple is pronounced [t]: *watch* → *watched*
  - [d] when the verb ends in a voiced sound, the past simple is pronounced [d]: *play* → *played*
  - [ɪd] when the verb ends in t or d, the past simple is pronounced [ɪd]: *want* → *wanted*





# Progress check

## History makers

### 1 Complete the sentences with these words.

architect explorer astronauts composers  
director painter

- Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin were American ... . They went to the moon in 1969.
- Vasco da Gama was a Portuguese ... . He was the first to sail directly to India.
- The ... Santiago Calatrava designed the airport in Bilbao.
- Leonid Gaidai is a famous Russian ... . Yuri Nikulin often acted in his films.
- Goya was a Spanish ... . You can see some of his work at the Prado Museum.
- Beethoven and Bach were German ... . They wrote and played classical music.

## Irregular verbs

### 2 Find six irregular past forms in the wordsquare. What are the infinitives?

E	B	E	C	A	M	E	P
F	A	Y	T	E	R	W	L
T	W	A	W	E	N	T	I
I	R	E	O	T	A	E	G
K	O	T	R	U	H	A	D
O	T	R	E	A	R	Y	O
H	E	A	T	M	A	D	E

## Past simple: *be*; *there was* / *were*

### 3 Complete the dialogue with *was*, *were*, *wasn't* or *weren't*.

- A (1) ... Tutankhamun's tomb in the Great Pyramid of Giza?  
 B No, it (2) ... It (3) ... in a smaller pyramid in the Valley of the Kings.  
 A (4) ... there a lot of mummies inside the tomb?  
 B No, there (5) ... Just Tutankhamun's mummy. But there (6) ... a lot of treasure.  
 A What kind of treasure?  
 B There (7) ... sculptures and clothes and a lot of jewellery.  
 A (8) ... there a death mask?  
 B Yes, there (9) ... You can see it in the Egyptian Museum in Cairo.

## Past simple affirmative

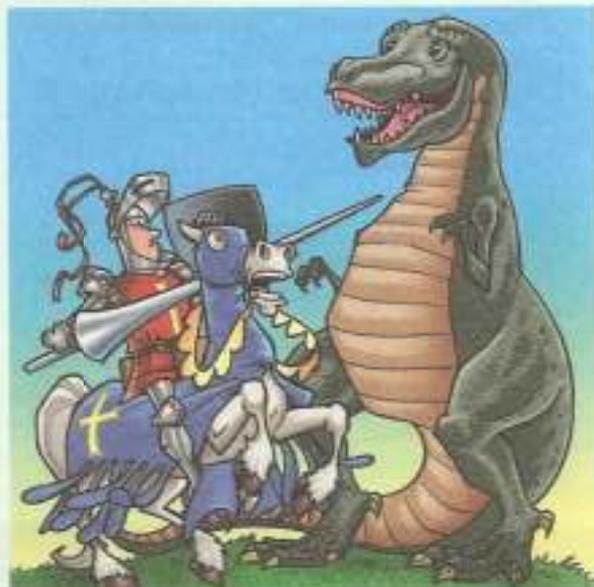
### 4 Complete the text with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Neil Armstrong (1) ... (be) the first man to walk on the moon. He (2) ... (travel) there on the Apollo 11 spaceship in July 1969. Armstrong (3) ... (wear) special clothes and a helmet and he (4) ... (take) photographs of the moon. He (5) ... (speak) to the American President and he (6) ... (leave) an American flag on the moon. He (7) ... (stay) there for about three hours and then he (8) ... (return) to Earth. About 500 million people (9) ... (watch) the moon landing on television.

## Cumulative grammar 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

### 5 Choose the correct words.

There (1) **is** / **are** stories about dragons in all cultures, but (2) **isn't** / **there isn't** any evidence of real dragons. So, where (3) **are** / **do** dragons come from? Some people (4) **say** / **says** that dinosaurs (5) **was** / **were** probably the origin. Perhaps people (6) **found** / **find** dinosaur bones or fossils, and made stories about the imaginary creatures. Pictures usually show that dragons (7) **is** / **are** similar to large reptiles. (8) **They've** / **Have** also got wings, and they (9) **breathe usually** / **usually breathe** fire. (10) **England's** / **Englands'** famous dragon story (11) **is** / **are** Saint George and the Dragon. Perhaps Saint George's dragon (12) **were** / **was** a distant relative of Tyrannosaurus Rex!



# Team Spirit

8

## Unit contents:

**Vocabulary** Olympic sports; clothes and accessories

**Grammar** Past simple: negative and questions; past time expressions

**Skills** Read about the Olympic Games  
Listen to a tour of Wembley Stadium  
Write a class survey  
Talk about past events

**Across the curriculum** PE

**Culture** Sports Mad in New Zealand!



## Sports quiz

- 1 What sports are they playing in these pictures?
- 2 Where were the Olympics in 1980?  
a) Beijing    b) Sydney    c) Moscow
- 3 Where are the All Blacks from?  
a) England    b) France    c) New Zealand



At school we play football, tennis and cricket. What sports do you do in PE?

# Vocabulary 1

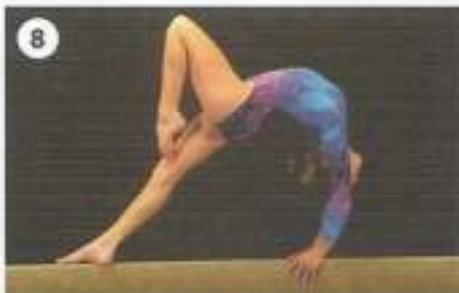
## Olympic sports

Recycle Which sports do you like?

football rugby tennis basketball cricket running

1 Match these sports with the pictures. Which two sports are not in the pictures?

badminton canoeing athletics judo skiing volleyball  
table tennis archery baseball gymnastics cycling swimming



2 74 Listen and repeat.

3 75 Listen to the sounds. Which sports do you hear?

4 Read the rules for *play*, *go* and *do* in the Language guide on page 110. Copy and complete the table with the sports in exercise 1.

play	go	do
tennis	swimming	judo

5 Can you add any more sports to the table?

## Speaking

6 Order the words to make questions.

- you / Do / playing / like / football ?
- do / often / swimming / go / How / you ?
- you / sport / Do / on / TV / watch ?
- are / sports / favourite / What / your ?

7 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 6.

- Do you like playing football?
- No, I don't. I prefer volleyball.

Vocabulary plus → Workbook p123



# The Olympic Games

## Did you know ...?

The Olympic flag symbolizes the five continents.

The athletes in Ancient Greece didn't wear clothes!

Women didn't participate in the Olympic Games until 1900. Now there are 97 events for women and 163 events for men.

### Historical facts and figures

Olympic winners

Olympic sports

2012 Olympics



The first Olympic Games were in Ancient Greece in 776 BC. These Games were only for Greek athletes – international athletes didn't participate. There were events like running and the pentathlon, but there weren't any team sports.

The modern Olympics started in Athens in 1896. Now they take place every four years. The only exceptions were 1916, 1940 and 1944. They didn't take place in those years because of the two world wars.

The Winter Olympics began in 1924. Now 80 countries participate in the Winter Games. There are seven winter sports, including skiing and ice hockey.

The Paralympics didn't exist until 1960. At the first Paralympics in Rome, there were 400 athletes. Now, nearly 4000 athletes participate in the Paralympics.

Before 1960, people didn't watch the Olympics on television. But in 2008, about one billion people around the world watched the Beijing Olympics opening ceremony!

1 Look at the information. What does the Olympic flag symbolize?

2 **76** Read and listen. Choose the correct words.

- International athletes **participated** / **didn't participate** in the ancient Olympic Games.
- There **were** / **weren't** team sports in the ancient Olympics.
- The Olympic Games **took place** / **didn't take place** in 1940.
- The Winter Olympics **began** / **didn't begin** in 1925.
- The Paralympics **existed** / **didn't exist** in 1961.
- People **watched** / **didn't watch** the Beijing Olympics on television.

3 Find these words in the text. Are they verbs or nouns?

participate events take place  
wars athletes exist

4 Read the information again. Answer the questions.

- When were the first ancient Olympic Games?
- Where were the first modern Olympic Games?
- How many Olympic winter sports are there?
- When were the first Paralympics?
- Where were the Olympic Games in 2008?
- How many Olympic events are there for men and women now?



# Grammar 1

## Past simple negative: regular and irregular verbs

- 1 Look at the example sentences. What form of the verb is after *didn't*? Is the form the same for regular and irregular verbs?

### past simple: negative

International athletes *didn't* participate in the ancient Olympics.

The athletes in Ancient Greece *didn't* wear clothes!

- 2 Read the information, then correct the sentences.

### Did you know ...?



Yevgeniya Kanayeva won an Olympic gold medal for gymnastics when she was 18 years old.

Americans started playing baseball in 1846.

Beach volleyball became an Olympic sport in 1996.

Wayne Rooney played his first England match at the age of 17.

Taekwondo became an Olympic sport in 2000.

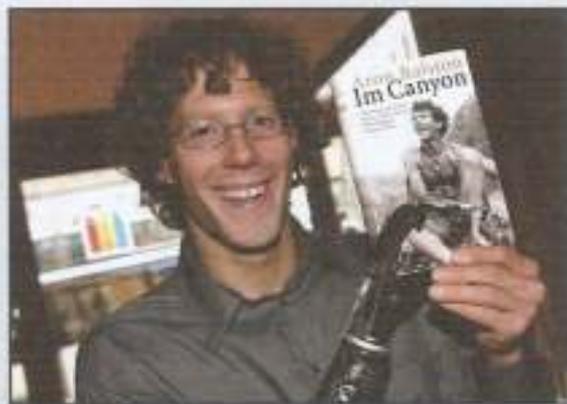
Lance Armstrong won the Tour de France seven times.

Americans started playing baseball in 1946. They *didn't* start playing baseball in 1946. They started playing baseball in 1846.

- 1 Taekwondo became an Olympic sport in 1980.
- 2 Beach volleyball became an Olympic sport in 1956.
- 3 Wayne Rooney played for France when he was 17.
- 4 Yevgeniya Kanayeva won an Olympic gold medal for archery.
- 5 Lance Armstrong won the Tour de France ten times.

- 3 Complete the text with the past simple of these verbs.

write not take not drink walk not tell  
not sleep escape not see



On Saturday 26th April, 2003, Aron Ralston went climbing in the Utah National Park, USA. He *didn't* tell his friends or family, and he (1) ... a mobile phone.

Later, there was a terrible accident. An enormous rock trapped Aron's arm. He was there for six days. He (2) ... at night because it was very cold. He (3) ... any fresh water, and there wasn't any food. He (4) ... any other people.

But Aron *didn't* die. On the sixth day, he (5) ... . He amputated his trapped arm with a small knife. Then he (6) ... six miles. Finally, a helicopter rescued him. Aron (7) ... a book about his experience. Now he climbs with an artificial arm.

- 4 **Your voice** What sports did you do last week? Write true sentences with *play, go or do*.

football skiing volleyball judo canoeing  
athletics swimming yoga

I played football. I *didn't* go skiing.

- 5 Compare your sentences with a partner. Who did more sport last week?



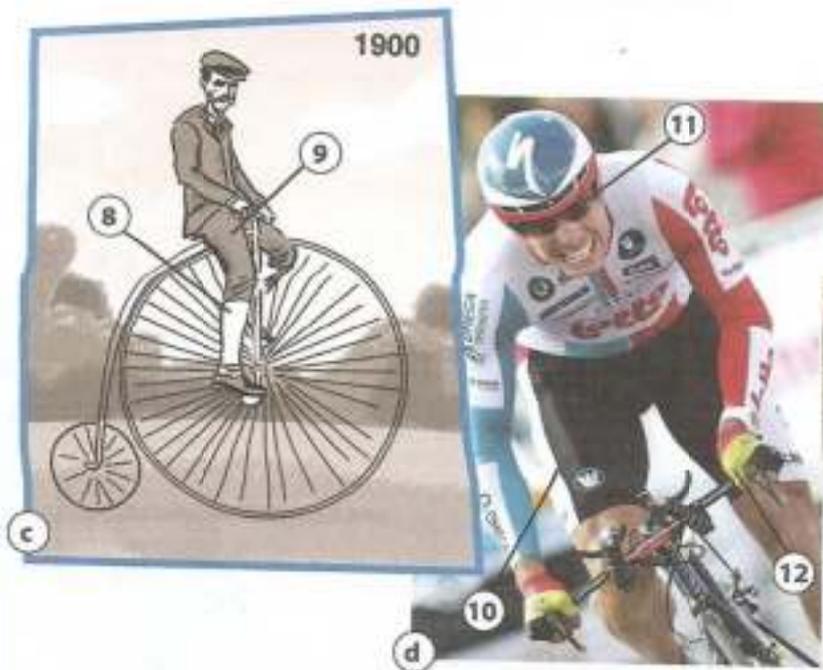
Language guide p111

# Vocabulary 2

## Clothes and accessories

1 Match these clothes and accessories with the pictures.

dress shoes gloves skirt trainers cap  
trousers hat glasses shorts T-shirt socks



2 **77** Listen and repeat.

3 Write sentences about pictures a and c.

In 1900, tennis players didn't wear trainers. They wore shoes.

In 1900, cyclists didn't wear helmets. They wore hats.

4 Put these words in alphabetical order.

jacket boots tracksuit  
jeans coat sweater

5 Now find the words in a dictionary. How do you say them in your language?

6 Complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if you don't know the words.

- 1 Today I'm wearing ...
- 2 When I do sport, I usually wear ...
- 3 My favourite clothes are ...
- 4 I don't like wearing ...

### Pronunciation: sentence stress

a **78** Listen to the stress in this sentence.

They didn't wear jeans. They wore trousers.

b **79** Listen and repeat. Make sure you stress the correct words.

- 1 He didn't go out. He stayed in.
- 2 She hasn't got a blue bag. She's got a red bag.
- 3 I didn't see James. I saw Tim.

7 **Your voice** Think of a person in your class. What is he / she wearing today? Write a description, but don't write his / her name.  
She's wearing ...

8 Work in pairs. Listen to your partner's description. Who is it?

- She's wearing a red T-shirt and jeans. She's wearing trainers and she's got a blue bag.
- Is it Maria?



Culture ...



**New Zealand**

Population: 4 million

Capital: Wellington

Languages: English and Maori

# Sports Mad in New Zealand!

**Q** People in New Zealand are mad about sport. What are their favourite sports?

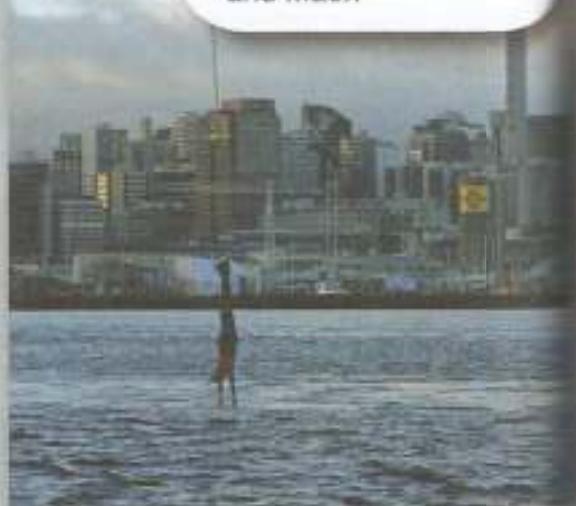
**A** Rugby is New Zealand's top sport. People also enjoy golf, horse-riding and skiing.

**Q** The Maori are New Zealand's native people. Which sports did they introduce?

**A** The Maori arrived in New Zealand about a thousand years ago. They introduced water sports like surfing and canoeing.

**Q** Why is the New Zealand rugby team called the All Blacks?

**A** Because they wear black T-shirts and black shorts.



**Q** Why do the All Blacks dance before a match?

**A** The All Blacks always do a Maori dance called a haka. Originally it was a war dance.

**Q** Cricket is New Zealand's second favourite sport. When did it become popular?

**A** Cricket was a popular British sport and New Zealand was part of the British Empire. It became popular about a hundred years ago.

**Q** Bungee jumping is very popular in New Zealand. Did they invent it there?

**A** No, they didn't. Bungee jumping was originally a Polynesian ritual. But a New Zealander called AJ Hackett made it popular about 30 years ago.



**1** What do you know about New Zealand? Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 New Zealand's favourite sport is cricket.
- 2 The original people of New Zealand are called Aborigines.
- 3 New Zealand's rugby team are called The Kiwis.
- 4 The New Zealand rugby team sing before a match.
- 5 In the past, New Zealand was part of the British Empire.
- 6 They invented bungee jumping in New Zealand.

**2** Read and listen. Check your answers and correct the false sentences.

**3** *Your voice* Answer the questions.

In your country ...

- 1 Which sports are popular?
- 2 Do people play rugby and cricket?
- 3 Does bungee jumping exist?
- 4 Are there any famous sports people?



## Grammar 2

### Past simple: questions and short answers

- 1 Look at the table and answer the questions.

#### past simple: questions and short answers

Did they invent bungee jumping in New Zealand?  
Yes, they did. / No, they didn't.  
Did Edmund Hillary climb Everest?  
Yes, he did. / No, he didn't.

- 1 What form is the verb after *Did*?
  - 2 Is it possible to translate *Did* into your language?
- 2 Order the words to make questions about the Welsh rugby player, Gavin Henson.
- Did / play / at / school / Gavin / rugby ?  
Did Gavin play rugby at school?
- 1 did / Where / go / he / to / school ?
  - 2 his / rugby / father / Did / play ?
  - 3 for / Gavin / 2000 / Did / in / play / Wales ?
  - 4 When / he / meet / Charlotte / did ?
  - 5 write / Gavin / book / Did / a ?
- 3 Read the text and answer the questions in exercise 2.

Did Gavin play rugby at school?  
Yes, he did.

#### Rugby star



Gavin Henson is a Welsh rugby player. He started playing rugby at Brynteg School in South Wales. His father was also a rugby player. Gavin played his first match for Wales in 2001. He was 'Young Player of the Year'.

2005 was a good year for Gavin. Wales won the Six Nations Rugby Championship, Gavin's team 'The Ospreys' won the Celtic League and he met his girlfriend, Charlotte Church. She's a famous singer and TV presenter. Gavin also wrote his autobiography in 2005.

### Past time expressions

- 4 Translate the example sentences. Is the order of the bold words the same in your language?

#### past time expressions

We played rugby **yesterday**.  
They won the League **last year**.  
I went to Australia **a year ago**.  
I saw him **in July**.

- 5 Write questions with *When*. Then write answers with *last*, *ago* or *in*.

this class / start?  
*When did this class start?*  
*This class started 40 minutes ago.*

- 1 you / go on holiday?
- 2 your teacher / start working here?
- 3 you / celebrate your birthday?
- 4 your parents / meet?
- 5 you / finish primary school?



Language guide p111

## Listening

- 6 Listen to a tour of Wembley stadium. Choose the correct facts.

#### THE NEW WEMBLEY STADIUM

Opened in (1) 2005 / 2007

Pitch size: 105 x (2)  
48 / 68 metres

(3) 60 000 / 90 000 seats!



- 7 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 How many toilets are there at the Wembley stadium?
- 2 When did they demolish the old Wembley stadium?
- 3 Who did England play in their first match at the new stadium?
- 4 Which teams played in the first FA Cup Final at the new stadium?
- 5 When was the Live Earth concert at Wembley?

# Writing dossier

## A class survey

### Class Survey: Sports

Name: Luc Lachaise

1 ... are your favourite sports?

My favourite sports are football and cycling.  
I love the Tour de France.

2 ... do you do exercise?

I usually do exercise four or five times a week.

3 Which sports ... you play last week?

I played volleyball and tennis at school, and I played football with my friends.

4 What ... your favourite football team?

My favourite football team is Marseille, because I lived there before I moved to Paris.

### Results

My classmates' favourite sports are football, tennis and aerobics.

The people in my class usually do exercise about three or four times a week.

Last week my classmates played tennis, basketball and football.

In my class, the popular football teams are Paris Saint-Germain and Olympique Lyonnais.



1 **82** Complete questions 1–4 in the survey with these words. Then listen and check.

is How often What did

2 Look at the Language focus. What is the form of the verb after *Do* and *Did*?

### Language focus: question forms

	present	past
be	What are your favourite team sports?	Where were the Olympics last year?
other verbs	Do you play football?	Which sports <i>did</i> you play last week?

3 Are these questions past or present? Can you guess the answers?

- Which sport does Andrei Kirilenko play?
- Who were the winners of Wimbledon in 2008?
- Which country won the European Football Championship in 2008?
- Where is the team Zenit from?
- How often do the Olympics take place?

Answers:

1 basketball 2 Rafael Nadal and Venus Williams 3 Spain 4 St Petersburg 5 every 4 years

## Writing plan

- Prepare a class survey about sports. First, answer the questions in Luc's class survey for you.
- Compare your answers then write the results. Include this information.
  - ✦ favourite sports
  - ✦ how often people do exercise
  - ✦ sports played last week
  - ✦ popular football teams
- Check your writing.
  - ✓ Use the correct tense – present or past.
  - ✓ Use the correct auxiliary in question forms.
  - ✓ Use the sports vocabulary from page 102.
- Write the final version and put it in your Dossier.

## Dialogue builder

### Talking about past events

- 1 **83** Megan and Jack are talking about the weekend. Listen and choose the correct words.



**Megan**

Did you have a good weekend?  
What did you do?

Did Arsenal win?  
Was it a good game?

I went to a museum.  
Yes, it was amazing. I saw lots of (3) mummies / statues!

**Jack**

Yes, I did. It was fantastic!  
I went to a football match. Arsenal v (1) Liverpool / Newcastle.

Yes, they did. They won two (2) nil / one.  
Yes – it was great. Anyway, what about you?  
What did you do at the weekend?  
Was it good?  
That sounds amazing!

- 2 **83** Listen again and repeat. Practise your intonation.
- 3 Look at part of the match report and answer the questions.



**Arsenal 2**

Theo Walcott  
Cesc Fabregas



**0 Liverpool**

Date: 20th May	Match rating ****
Stadium: Emirates (Arsenal)	Referee: James Davies
Attendance: 52 000	Star player: Cesc Fabregas

- 4 Prepare a new dialogue. Use the tickets below or your own ideas.



- 5 Work in pairs. Practise the dialogue.

- Did you have a good weekend?  
Yes, I did.

### Useful expressions

Did you have a good weekend?  
Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.  
What did you do?  
I went to ...

- Did Liverpool win?
- Did Theo Walcott score a goal?
- Did Arsenal play at home or away?
- How many spectators were there?
- Who was the star player?

# Language Guide

## Vocabulary

**play / go / do**

play + ball sports: play football / tennis / baseball  
 go + -ing: go swimming / running  
 do: do judo / archery

### Olympic sports



badminton



canoeing



athletics



skiing



volleyball



archery



baseball



gymnastics



cycling



swimming

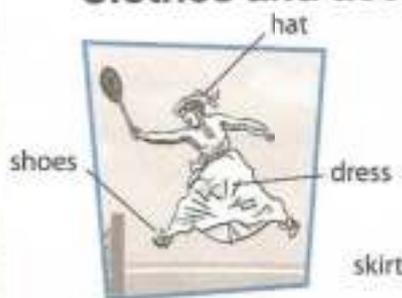


judo



tennis

### Clothes and accessories



### Dictionary extra!

- |                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Ancient Greece (n) | Paralympics (n)                  |
| arrive (v) ★★★     | participate (v) ★★               |
| athlete (n) ★      | take place (v)                   |
| bungee jumping (n) | team sport (n)                   |
| event (n) ★★★      | water sport (n)                  |
| invent (v) ★★      | wear (v) ★★★                     |
| Maori (n)          | winter (happening in winter) ★★★ |

### Useful expressions

Did you have a good weekend?  
 Yes, I did. No, I didn't.  
 What did you do?  
 I went to ...  
 Was it good?  
 Yes, it was amazing.

## Grammar

### Past simple negative

negative		
I / You He / She / It We / You / They	didn't (did not)	play yesterday.

- We make negative sentences in the past with *didn't* and the infinitive.  
*I didn't play football.* ✓  
~~*I didn't played football.*~~ X

### Past simple questions and short answers

questions		
Did	I / you he / she / it we / you / they	swim yesterday?

short answers		
Yes,	I / you he / she / it	did.
No,	we / you / they	didn't.

- We make questions in the past with *Did* and the infinitive.  
*Did you swim yesterday?* ✓  
~~*Did you swam yesterday?*~~ X
- In short answers in the past simple we don't repeat the main verb.  
*Did you play tennis?*  
*Yes, I did.* ✓  
~~*Yes, I played.*~~ X

### Past time expressions

- We use time expressions with the past simple to say when something happened or when we did something.

last	night / weekend / week / month / year
three	hours / days / months / years ago
in	October / 1998

*I went to the cinema last weekend.*  
*My team won a week ago.*  
*I visited my grandparents in September.*



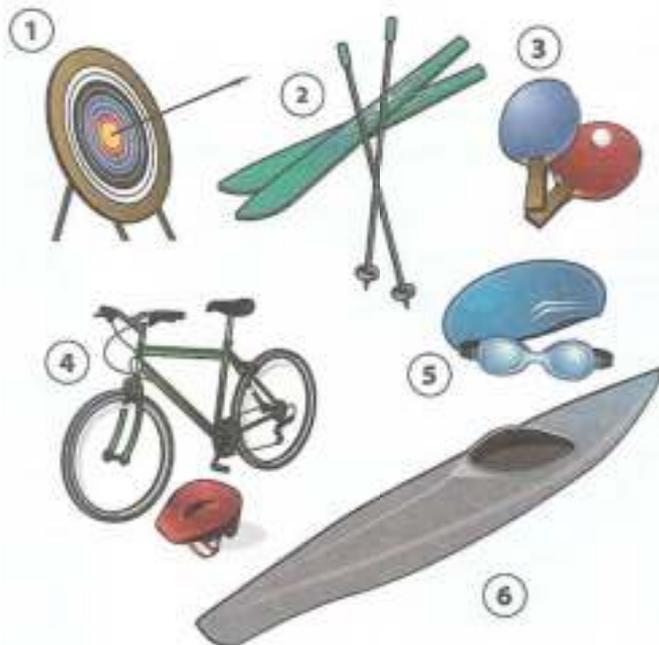
Grammar exercises → Workbook p113



## Progress check

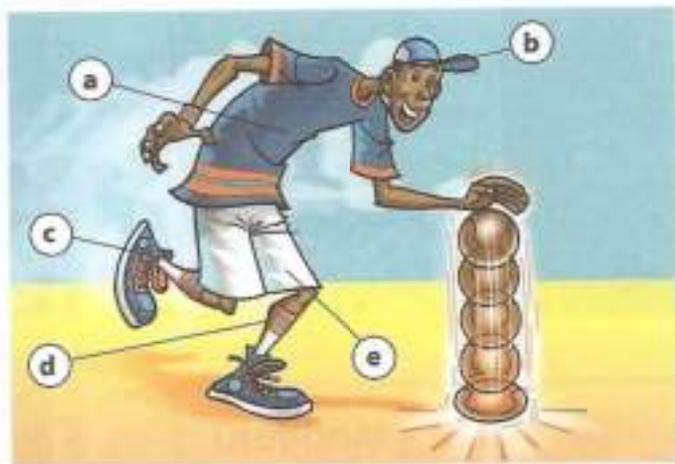
### Olympic sports

1 Write the sports.



### Clothes and accessories

2 Write the words for clothes and accessories a-e.



### Past simple: negative

3 Correct the sentences. Write one negative and one affirmative sentence. Use the information in brackets.

- David Beckham played for Real Betis. *X* (Real Madrid ✓)
- Spain won the 2006 World Cup. *X* (Italy ✓)
- The Tour de France started in 1800. *X* (1903 ✓)
- Taekwondo became an Olympic sport in 1998. *X* (2000 ✓)
- Cyclists started wearing lycra shorts in the 19th century. *X* (20th century ✓)

### Past simple: questions and answers

4 Write past simple questions. Then write short answers.

- you / go on holiday last summer? (✓)
- Serena Williams / win Wimbledon in 2007? (*X*)
- your parents / meet in England? (*X*)
- Iñaki Urdangarín / marry a princess? (✓)
- you / drive to school? (*X*)

### Past time expressions

5 Look at the information and answer the questions. Use as many time expressions as you can.

#### World Cup Finals

Year	Place	Final
2006	Germany	Italy (5) – France (3)
2002	Korea and Japan	Brazil (2) – Germany (0)
1998	France	France (3) – Brazil (0)
1994	USA	Brazil (3) – Italy (2)

- When was the World Cup in the USA?
- When did France win the World Cup?
- When was the final between Brazil and Germany?
- When did Italy win the World Cup?
- When was the World Cup in Germany?

### Cumulative grammar 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

6 Choose the correct words.

In 2014 Sochi (1) **hosts** / **hosted** the XXX Olympic Winter Games. A total of 98 events (2) **were** / **was** held during the Games. The events (3) **took** / **take** place in fantastic new venues. (4) **Do** / **Did** you know how many people in Russia watched the Olympics? Over 63 million!

There (5) **is** / **are** three mascots, a logo and a slogan for the Olympics. The mascots (6) **is** / **are** the Polar Bear, the Hare and the Leopard. The logo (7) **features** / **is featuring** a web address. The Games' official slogan is *Hot. Cool. Yours.* What (8) **does** / **do** it represent?

sochi 2014



# It's Summer!

# 9

## Unit contents:

**Vocabulary** The weather and seasons; landscape features

**Grammar** *be going to*; *How ...?* questions; *must / mustn't*

**Skills** Read about holiday camps

Listen to the weather forecast; people talking about holiday plans

Write a letter

Express quantity

**Across the curriculum** Geography

**Culture** Welcome to Canada!



Last summer I went to Spain with my family. Where did you go on holiday last year?

## Holiday quiz

- 1 Look at the pictures. Did you go to any places like these last year?
- 2 Which is the most popular holiday destination for British tourists?  
a) France      b) Spain      c) The USA
- 3 Where is the world's longest beach?  
a) Brazil      b) Scotland      c) Wales
- 4 In Australia, what season is it in August?  
a) summer      b) winter      c) spring



# Vocabulary 1

## The weather and seasons

1 Match the weather words with the pictures.

sunny warm windy hot cloudy foggy  
rainy snowy stormy wet cold dry

### spring ...



### summer ...



### autumn ...



### winter ...



2 84 Listen and repeat.

3 Look at the months. Then close your book and write them in the correct order. Are they in spring, summer, autumn or winter?



4 85 Listen to the weather forecast. Which season is it?



5 85 Listen again. Put the symbols in the correct places on the map.

6 *Your voice* What's the weather like in different seasons in your town? Ask and answer.

- What's the weather like in spring?
- It's warm and sunny.

Recycle Look at the activities. What do you like doing on holiday?

go swimming sunbathe go camping  
take photos make new friends go shopping

Vocabulary plus → Workbook p124

From Hannah Date posted 23 July, 16:00

### Is there anyone there?

Hi! I'm going to be at Camp Active next week, from 30th July to 8th August. Is anyone else going to be there? Please write back if you are. I don't want to be all alone! Also, what is it going to be like? It's going to be my first time there ...

From William Date posted 23 July, 16:20

### Camp Active is the best!

Hey, Hannah. Which holiday are you going to do? I did Multi Activity last year and it was the best holiday ever! This year I'm going with my brother Nathan. I'm going to do Extreme Adventure this time and he's going to do Multi Activity. It's his first time too! We aren't going to stay in the indoor accommodation, though. They've got tents there, so we're going to stay on the campsite. It's going to be hot next week so I think we're going to be OK!

By the way, Multi Activity is things like cycling, football, zip wires, etc. On Extreme Adventure we're going to do zorbing as well!

From Jessica Date posted 23 July, 17:15

### Only one week to go!

Hi there. Don't worry, Hannah - you aren't going to be all alone! My friend Amy and I are going to be there too. We're going to do Water Sports (kayaking and windsurfing), but we're staying in the indoor accommodation. No camping - it's going to rain all day on Saturday! William, you are going to get very wet!! Camp Active is fantastic. The instructors are really nice. One of them (David) was so cool but he isn't going to be there this year.

From Hannah Date posted 23 July, 18:00

I am going to do Extreme Adventure too. The zorbing looks amazing!! I can't wait!!



Zip wire

1  Read and listen. Then answer the question.

Which of the three types of holiday are Hannah, William and Jessica going to do?

2 Read the text again. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 This is William's first time at Camp Active.
- 2 Everyone does the same activities at Camp Active.
- 3 There are two types of accommodation at Camp Active.
- 4 Jessica is going to Camp Active alone.
- 5 Hannah is going to try zorbing.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1 When is Hannah going to arrive at Camp Active?
- 2 Did Hannah go there last year?
- 3 Did William go to Camp Active last year?
- 4 Does William like camping?
- 5 Which holiday are Jessica and Amy going to do?
- 6 Who was Jessica's favourite instructor?

4 Would you like to go on a Camp Active holiday? Why? / Why not?

# Grammar 1

## be going to

- 1 Look at the examples. What form is the verb after *be going to*?

### affirmative

I'm going to be at Camp Active next week.  
It's going to rain all day on Saturday!  
We're going to stay on the campsite.

### negative

I'm not going to do Multi Activity this year.  
David isn't going to be there this year.  
We aren't going to stay in a tent.

### Future time expressions

tonight tomorrow next week  
next month next year

Look!

- 2 Complete the sentences with the *be going to* form of the verbs in brackets.

It's going to rain (rain) tonight.

- 1 I ... (study) tomorrow morning.
- 2 My cousins ... (come) for dinner tomorrow evening.
- 3 I ... (buy) some new clothes next weekend.
- 4 My sister ... (visit) London next month.
- 5 We ... (go) skiing next winter.
- 6 Spain ... (win) the World Cup next time.

- 3 Make the sentences in exercise 2 negative.

- 4 Complete the email. Use the affirmative or negative form of *be going to*.

eee

Hi Katy,

It's nearly the holidays! I'm *not going to go* (not go) on holiday with my parents this summer. I (1) ... (spend) two weeks at a summer camp! My brother (2) ... (come) too. We (3) ... (stay) in the forest, but we (4) ... (not camp). There are cabins for eight people. It (5) ... (be) great! I hope it (6) ... (not rain). We (7) ... (do) lots of different sports like climbing and canoeing. Don't worry – I (8) ... (send) you lots of photos!

Have a great holiday!

Love,

Sarah

- 5 Look at the questions. How is the word order different from the affirmative?

### questions and answers

Are you going to try zorbing?  
Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.  
Is it going to rain?  
Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.  
Which holiday are you going to do?  
I'm going to do the Watersports holiday.

- 6 Write questions about plans for the summer holiday. Use *be going to*.

What / do this summer?

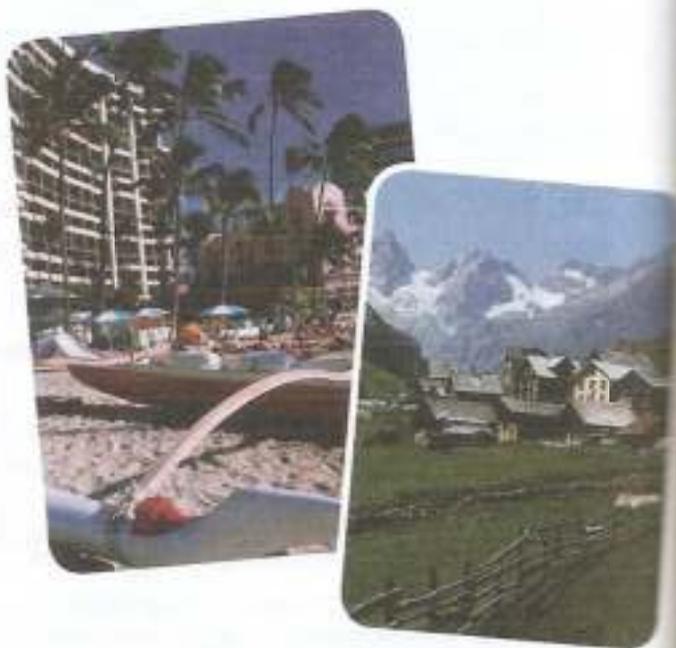
What are you going to do this summer?

- 1 Where / go?
- 2 Who / go with?
- 3 What / read?
- 4 you / study this summer?
- 5 What sports / play?
- 6 you / speak English?

## Speaking

- 7 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 6. Can you think of any more questions?

- What are you going to do this summer?
- I'm going to go on holiday.

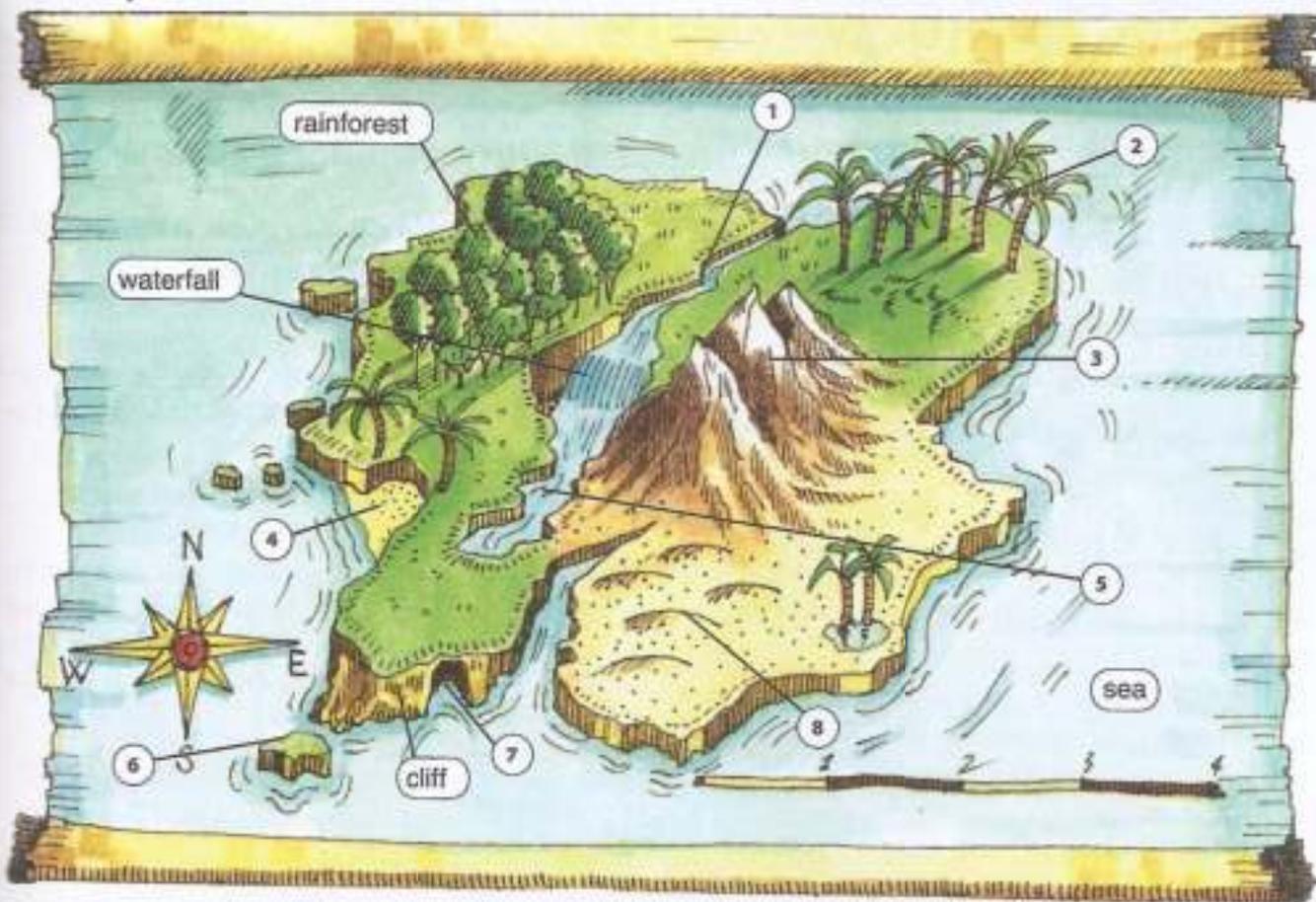


# Vocabulary 2

## Landscape features

1 Match these words with the places on the map.

see mountain river lake cave waterfall forest rainforest desert cliff beach island



2 **87** Listen and repeat.

3 Try the geography quiz. Check your answers at the bottom of the page.

Which river is in London?

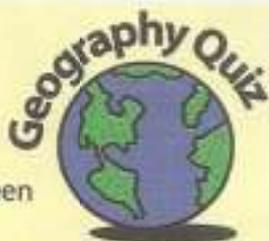
Can you name two rivers in Russia?

Which mountains are between France and Italy?

Can you name a desert in Africa?

Which famous waterfall is between Canada and the USA?

Can you name four countries around the Mediterranean Sea?



Answers: 1 the Thames 2 for example, the Volga, the Oka, the Don 3 the Alps 4 for example, the Sahara Desert, the Namib Desert, the Kalahari Desert 5 Niagara Falls 6 any from Spain, France, Monaco, Slovenia, Italy, Croatia, Bosnia Herzegovina, Montenegro, Albania, Greece, Turkey, Syria, Lebanon, Israel, Egypt, Libya, Tunisia, Algeria, Morocco

## Listening

4 **88** Listen to Megan, Emma and Jack chatting about their holiday plans. Which country are they each going to visit?

5 **88** Listen again and choose the correct answers.

- Emma and her family are going to stay in a ...
  - cave.
  - villa.
  - hotel.
- Emma's going to visit ...
  - a waterfall.
  - the rainforest.
  - some caves.
- Jack's going to stay ...
  - with friends.
  - on a campsite.
  - at home.
- Jack's ... is going to visit London.
  - cousin
  - girlfriend
  - penfriend
- Megan is going to see ...
  - the Rocky Mountains.
  - the Niagara Falls.
  - the rainforest.



## Culture ...



# Canada

**Population:** 33 million  
**Capital:** Ottawa  
**Other cities:** Toronto, Vancouver  
**Languages:** English and French

**Welcome to Canada!**  
**We hope you enjoy your stay here.**

Here are the answers to some of your Frequently Asked Questions ...

**Q** How high are the Niagara Falls?

**A** The Niagara Falls are only 52 metres high. The world's highest waterfall is the Angel Falls in Venezuela – that's 979 metres high!

**Q** How big are Canada's Great Lakes?

**A** There are five Great Lakes: Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie and Ontario. Lake Superior is 82 000 km<sup>2</sup>. That's bigger than Scotland!

**Q** How many national parks are there in Canada?

**A** There are 36 national parks, including the Banff National Park. That's where the Rocky Mountains are.

**Q** How high are the Rocky Mountains? Is it safe to go walking there?

**A** The Rocky Mountains are more than 4000 metres high. It's a great place to go walking, but be careful – there are bears in summer. Remember that you mustn't feed them!



**Q** Can we visit the Arctic Circle? How cold is it there?

**A** Yes, you can visit the Canadian province of Nunavut. You can see polar bears there – it's -50 degrees in winter so you must take some warm clothes!

**Q** We want to travel from east to west. How far is it?

**A** Canada is an enormous country. It's 4466 km from Toronto to Vancouver on the train. The journey takes three days and three nights – but you see some wonderful landscapes on the way!



**1** Look at the pictures. Do you know the names of these places?

**2** **89** Read and listen. Complete the sentences with these numbers.

36 82 000 4000 52 4466

- The Niagara Falls are ... metres high.
- Lake Superior is ... km<sup>2</sup>.
- There are ... national parks in Canada.
- The Rocky Mountains are ... metres high.
- It's ... km from Toronto to Vancouver.

**3** **Your voice** Answer the questions.

In your country ...

- Which places do tourists visit?
- Are there any high mountains?
- Are there any big lakes?
- How cold is it in winter?
- How hot is it in summer?

... learn more!



Canada → Workbook p137

## Grammar 2

### How...? questions

- 1 Translate the questions into your language.

#### How ...? questions

How big is Lake Superior?  
 How high are the Niagara Falls?  
 How far is it from the east to the west of Canada?  
 How cold is it in Nunavut in winter?

- 2 Match the questions with the answers.

- How old is your school?
- How fast can a cheetah run?
- How tall are you?
- How long is an Olympic swimming pool?
- How hot is it here in summer?

- About 1 metre 70 centimetres.
- About 20 years old.
- 35 degrees.
- About 100 kph.
- 50 metres.

- 3 Write questions about the two amusement parks. Use these words.

How far How old How high How fast

How far is Port Aventura from Barcelona?

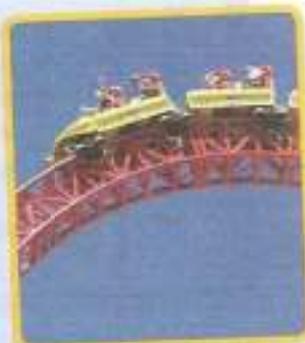
#### Port Aventura

- 80 km from Barcelona
- opened in 1995
- Star ride:  
Hurakan Condor  
height: 100 metres  
speed: 110 kph



#### PARQUE WARNER

- 25 km from Madrid
- opened in 2002
- Star ride:  
Superman rollercoaster  
height: 50 metres  
speed: 100 kph



- 4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- How far is Port Aventura from Barcelona?  
It's 80 km.

### must / mustn't

- 5 How do you say these words in your language?

#### must / mustn't

We use *must* for obligation.  
 We use *mustn't* for prohibition.

- 6 Look at the signs and match the rules with the pictures.



#### ROCKY MOUNTAINS NATIONAL PARK RULES

- You must respect the plants and flowers.
- You mustn't camp.
- You must use the litter bins.
- You mustn't make a fire.
- You must close the gates.
- You mustn't feed the bears.

- 7 Write rules for this ride. Use *must* or *mustn't*.

- buy a ticket ✓  
You *must* buy a ticket.
- 1 be more than 1 m tall ✓
- 2 take photos X
- 3 sit down ✓
- 4 eat or drink X
- 5 carry a bag on the ride X



#### Pronunciation: must / mustn't

- a **90** Listen and repeat.  
 You *must* have a passport.  
 You *mustn't* use a mobile on the plane.
- b **91** Listen. Do you hear *must* or *mustn't*?

- 8 **Your voice** Write rules for your classroom.  
 You *mustn't* use mobile phones.



# Writing dossier

## A letter



Dear Rafael,

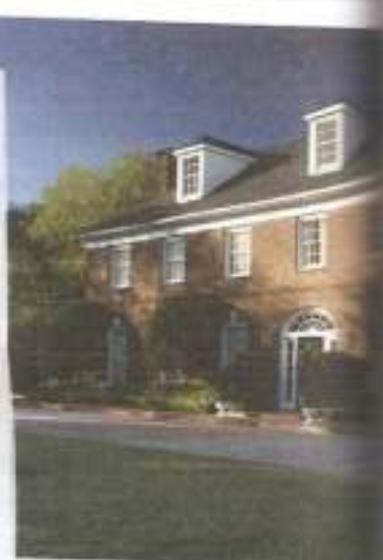
You're going to be here soon! I'm going to meet you with my parents at the airport, on Saturday 23rd August at half past three.

Later in the evening we're going to go to a party at my friend's house, so you can practise your English! On Sunday we're going to watch an Arsenal match. Is that OK?

Then we're going to visit some places with the other exchange students. I think we're going to go to Oxford on Tuesday and to Bath on Friday.

You must bring some warm clothes because it often rains here in summer. There's a big carnival in London at the weekend. We're going to have fun!

See you soon,  
Jack



- 1 **92** Jack's Spanish penfriend is going to visit London. Read and listen to Jack's letter and answer the questions.

- 1 When is Rafael going to arrive in London?
- 2 What are they going to do on Sunday?
- 3 Which other places are they going to visit?
- 4 When is the carnival?

- 2 Look at the Language focus. Copy and complete the table with these words and phrases.

summer Saturday the airport half past three  
the evening 23rd August

### Language focus: prepositions of place and time

in	towns and cities	London
	parts of the day	(1) ...
	months / seasons	(2) ...
on	days	(3) ...
	dates	(4) ...
at	times	(5) ...
	places	(6) ...

- 3 Complete the sentences with *at*, *in* or *on*.

- 1 I'm going to arrive ... 15th July.
- 2 It's usually hot here ... August.
- 3 The party starts ... eight o'clock.
- 4 There's a medieval castle ... Warwick.

## Writing plan

- ① Plan a letter. Imagine a British student is going to stay with you this summer. Answer these questions.

- 1 When / Where are you going to meet?
- 2 What are you going to do on the first day?
- 3 What other places are you going to visit?
- 4 What's the weather going to be like?
- 5 What clothes must he / she bring?

- ② Write a first version. Include this information.

- ✦ arrangements for meeting
- ✦ plans for the first day
- ✦ plans for the rest of the week
- ✦ weather / clothes to bring

- ③ Check your writing.

- ✓ Use the correct forms of *be* going to.
- ✓ Use *at*, *in* and *on* correctly.

- ④ Write the final version and put it in your Dossier.

## Dialogue builder

### Expressing quantity

- 1  93 Jack is at the post office. Listen and complete the dialogue.



#### Assistant

Hello. Can I help you?  
It's 50 pence for all European countries.

Certainly. Here you are.  
That's (3) ..., please.  
Thanks.

Yes – it's just outside, on the corner.

#### Jack

Yes – how much does it cost to send a letter to (1) ...?  
Oh, OK. And can I have five (2) ... class stamps as well, please?

Thanks. How much is that?  
Here you are.  
Is there a postbox near here?  
Thanks. Bye.

- 2  93 Listen again and repeat. Practise your intonation.

- 3 Look at the envelope. Put the parts of the address in order.

- street name     surname     first name  
 house number     postcode     city

Sarah Hirst,  
45 Church Road,  
Oxford,  
OX1 5PR



- 4 Write this address in the correct order.  
South Street NG5 2BN Nottingham 32  
Mr Richard Brown

- 5 Imagine you're on holiday in London, and you want to send postcards to your friends. Prepare a new dialogue.

- 6 Work in pairs. Practise your dialogue.

-  Hello. Can I help you?  
 Yes – how much does it cost ...

#### Useful expressions

How much does it cost to send a letter to ...?  
Can I have ... first / second class stamps, please?  
Is there a postbox near here?

# Language Guide

## Vocabulary

### The weather and seasons

#### Spring



warm



cloudy



rainy

#### Summer



hot



sunny



dry

#### Autumn



wet



windy



foggy

#### Winter



cold

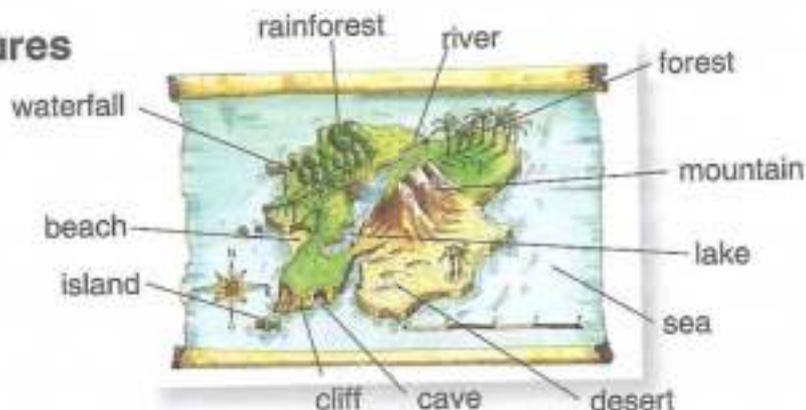


snowy



stormy

### Landscape features



#### Dictionary extra!



accommodation (n) ★★

adventure (n) ★★

camping (n) ★

campsite (n)

east (n) ★★★

high (adj) ★★★

journey (n) ★★★

national park (n) ★

tent (n) ★★

train (n) ★★★

travel (v) ★★★

west (n) ★★★

windsurfing (n)

zorbing (n)

#### Useful expressions

How much does it cost to send a letter to ...?  
Can I have ... first / second class stamps, please?  
How much is that?  
Is there a postbox near here?

## Grammar

### be going to

affirmative	
I'm (am)	going to visit Canada.
You're (are)	
He / She / It's (is)	
We / You / They're (are)	
negative	
I'm not (am not)	going to visit Canada.
You aren't (are not)	
He / She / It isn't (is not)	
We / You / They aren't (are not)	
questions	
Am I	going to travel tomorrow?
Are you	
Is he / she / it	
Are we / you / they	
short answers	
Yes, I am. / No, I'm not. Yes, you are. / No, you aren't. Yes, he / she / it is. / No, he / she / it isn't. Yes, we / you / they are. / No, we / you / they aren't.	

- We use *be going to* to talk about plans and intentions for the future.
- To form sentences we use:  
subject + *be* + *going to* + verb  
*She* + *is* + *going to* + *arrive*

### Future time expressions

- We use future time expressions to say when we are going to do something.  
*tonight tomorrow next week  
next month next year*

### How ...? questions

*How* + adjective + *be* + ... ?  
*How* + *big* + *is* + *your city*?  
*How* + adverb + *can* / *do* + ... ?  
*How* + *fast* + *can* + *you run*?

### must / mustn't

I	must mustn't	sit down. eat here.
You		
He / She / It		
We / You / They		

- We use *must* for rules, regulations and obligations.
- We use *mustn't* for prohibition.
- The form is the same for all persons.



Grammar exercises → Workbook p115



## Progress check

### Weather and seasons

1 Write sentences to describe the weather.



2 Which season are these festivals in? Write sentences.

Halloween (October)  
Halloween is in autumn.

- 1 Christmas (December)
- 2 The Notting Hill Carnival (August)
- 3 Easter (March or April)
- 4 Thanksgiving (November)
- 5 Independence Day (July)

### Landscape features

3 Complete the text with these words.

Ocean forests Islands volcanoes Sea

The Kuril (1) ... are in Far Eastern Russia. They separate the (2) ... of Okhotsk and the Pacific (3) ... . This chain of islands is about 1200 kilometres long. The biggest island is Shikotan. It's 225 square kilometres. The climate on the islands is harsh, with long cold winters and short foggy summers. In summer the temperature does not usually rise above 19 degrees.

There are about 100 (4) ... on the islands. The biggest one is Alaid. It's 2339 metres high.

There are a lot of (5) ... in the south with lots of different species of plants and animals. Spruce and larch trees are dominant there.

### How ...? questions

4 Write questions. Use *How* and these adjectives.

high many long warm big

- 1 ... is Shikotan Island? It's 225 square kilometres.
- 2 ... is Alaid volcano? It's 2339 metres.
- 3 ... volcanoes are there on the Kuril Islands? There are about 100.
- 4 ... is it on the islands in summer? It's about 19 degrees.
- 5 ... is the chain of the islands? It's 1200 kilometres.

### be going to

5 Write sentences or questions with *be going to*.

- 1 What / you / do / in August (?)
- 2 I / visit / a friend in Galicia (✓)
- 3 We / not go / abroad (X)
- 4 My cousin / travel to Mexico (✓)
- 5 Where / she / stay (?)
- 6 She / not speak / English (X)

### must / mustn't

6 Write sentences with *must / mustn't* and these phrases.

buy a ticket run have a shower dive  
bring glass bottles wear a swimming hat



### Cumulative grammar 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

7 Choose the correct words.

- A Excuse me! (1) **Do you live / You live** here?  
B Yes, I do. Can I (2) **help / to help** you?  
A Yes. How (3) **high / far** is it to the top of the (4) **river / mountain**?  
B Oh, it's about ten miles. (5) **You have got / Have you got** an umbrella?  
A Er, no. I (6) **didn't bring / not brought** one.  
(7) **Is / It's** a beautiful day!  
B Well, you (8) **must / must to** walk (9) **quickly / fast**. It's (10) **raining / going to rain** later.



# Revision 3

Start

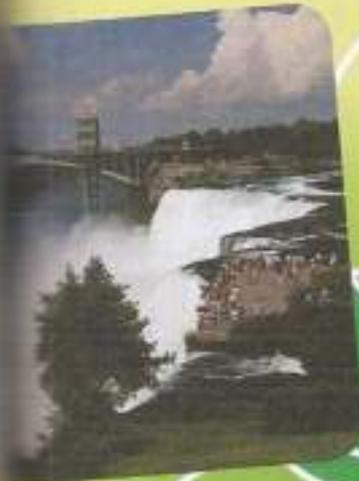
## Vocabulary

Listen to your teacher's instructions.  
How many books have you got at the end?



What are you wearing today?  
Describe your clothes.

Name the four seasons.



Name three places in Canada  
and three places to visit in your country.



Name six Olympic sports.



What are the past simple forms of these verbs?  
*write read buy find see*



What's the weather like in your town today?  
What was it like yesterday?



Can you name one Egyptian king, one Austrian composer, one German scientist and one English queen?



Finish

## Reading

- 1 Read the book reviews. Which three types of books are they?

comedy music adventure horror novel sport

### Holiday Reading

#### Our readers recommend



#### Spirit of the Mountain

by Shelley Davidow

This novel is based in South Africa and it's about a girl called Emily. Emily is anorexic and she says she isn't going to eat again. But then she goes to stay with her uncle on his farm and she meets two new friends: a boy called Joey and a woman called Anna. Slowly, her life begins to change ...

I really enjoyed reading this book. I found it in my school library, and I definitely recommend it!

Cathy (13)

#### Big Match Manager

by Tom Sheldon

This book is a football adventure! The reader must play imaginary football games and try to solve a mystery. If you're a football fan, it's a perfect book for your summer holiday because it's great fun.

My mum and dad gave me this book on the last day of school and I really enjoyed it because it's so interactive.

Tom (11)

#### THE ALEX RIDER SERIES

by Anthony Horowitz

This is a series of books about a teenage spy called Alex Rider. I read the first book (*Stormbreaker*) last summer and this summer I'm going to read the seventh one, called *Snakehead*. All the books are great because the stories are really exciting. Alex Rider has lots of adventures in different places around the world. I recommend this series to anyone who likes adventure books.

Jamie (12)

- 2 Read the reviews again and answer the questions.

- 1 Where does Emily live in *Spirit of the Mountain*?
- 2 Where did Cathy find the book?
- 3 What must the reader do with *Big Match Manager*?
- 4 Why did Tom enjoy the book?
- 5 When did Jamie read *Stormbreaker*?
- 6 What is Jamie going to read this summer?

## Listening

- 3 **94** Listen to Ann and Rob talking about the summer reading. Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Which book did Ann read last summer?  
a) the last Harry Potter book  
b) *The Lord of the Rings*  
c) *Pride and Prejudice*
- 2 Which book is she going to read this summer?  
a) *Wuthering Heights* b) *Pride and Prejudice*  
c) *Stormbreaker*
- 3 How long is her new book?  
a) 250 pages b) 380 pages c) 420 pages
- 4 How many books does Rob usually read in the summer holidays?  
a) one b) two c) three
- 5 What's he going to read this summer?  
a) a book about Australia b) *Snakehead*  
c) *The Lord of the Rings*
- 6 What was the last book he read?  
a) *Snakehead* b) *Stormbreaker*  
c) a book about sport

## Speaking

- 4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- What was the last book you read?
- What was it about?
- Which book are you going to read this summer?
- How many books do you usually read in the holidays?
- Do you read English books?
- What are your favourite books?

## Project

You are going to prepare a 'Summer Reading' section for your school magazine. Listen to your teacher's instructions.

# Grammar

## Past simple

1 Complete the text with the past simple



form of the verbs in brackets.

Last August I (1) ... (go) to a summer camp, and this is the book I (2) ... (read) there. It's called *How to Survive Summer Camp* and it's by Jacqueline Wilson. I (3) ... (not buy) the book - my sister (4) ... (give) it to me for my birthday. The book is about a girl called Stella at the Evergreen Summer Camp. At first Stella (5) ... (not be) happy, but in the end she (6) ... (enjoy) her holiday. The people (7) ... (be) nice, and she (8) ... (not want) to go home! I really (9) ... (like) this book. It (10) ... (be) very funny, and I recommend it to anyone who is going to go to summer camp this year!

## be going to

2 Correct the sentences. Write one negative and one affirmative sentence with *be going to*.

JK Rowling is going to write a new Harry Potter book. (go on holiday)

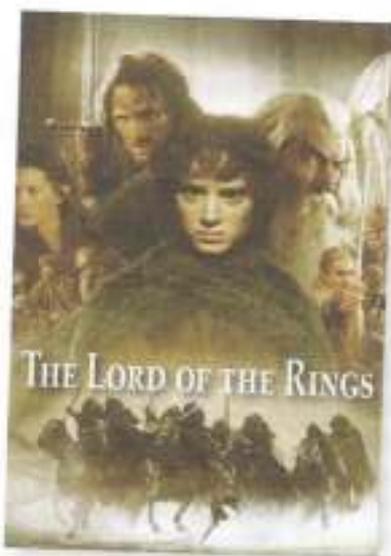
JK Rowling isn't going to write a new Harry Potter book. She's going to go on holiday.

- They are going to make ten Harry Potter films. (eight)
- Johnny Depp is going to be Harry Potter in the next film. (Daniel Radcliffe)
- I'm going to read seven Harry Potter books this summer. (one)
- We're going to see the new film on Friday. (Saturday)
- Harry Potter is going to die in the last film. (live)



## Question forms

3 Complete the questions for these answers.



- When ...?  
JRR Tolkien wrote *The Lord of the Rings* in 1954.
  - Where ...?  
They made the films in New Zealand.
  - What ...?  
The director's going to make a new film next year.
  - ... in English?  
No, I'm not. I'm going to read the book in Russian.
  - How ...?  
There are three *The Lord of the Rings* books.
  - How ...?  
The hobbits are about one metre tall.
- 4 Choose the correct words.
- Ron and Hermione **was** / **were** Harry's friends.
  - There **was** / **were** a new Jacqueline Wilson book last year.
  - We **studied** / **will study** that book at school last year.
  - I **didn't read** / **read** *The Lord of the Rings* books, but I saw the films.
  - I **buy** / **bought** a new book yesterday.
  - Did you finish** / **You finished** all the Harry Potter books?
  - What you are** / **are you going to read** this summer?
  - You must **read** / **to read** this book - it's fantastic!

# English sketches

95 Listen and read. Then act out the sketch in groups.

## Characters

Girls Roxy, Lily

Boys Matt, Cal

Girl or boy Nicky

### Monday morning, outside school

**Matt** Hi, how was the weekend?  
**Cal** Good. Very good. Did you have a good weekend?  
**Matt** Yes. It was OK. My mum, my brothers and I went cycling at a lake near the mountains on Saturday.  
**Cal** Where was that?  
**Matt** I don't know the name; there was a waterfall and forest. And it was sunny. We had a good day.  
**Cal** What did you do yesterday?  
**Matt** I did my homework and revised for exams.  
**Cal** I'm going to start tomorrow.  
**Matt** We've got history on Thursday! There are a lot of kings and queens and politicians. It isn't easy.  
**Cal** We can study together. Lily and I are going to study at Nicky's house tonight.  
**Matt** Good idea! Hey, you didn't tell me about your weekend.  
**Cal** Erm, Lily and I went to the cinema.  
**Matt** Really? Wow. What did you see? Where did you meet? What was ... *[Roxy arrives]*  
**Cal** Ssh! Hi MR. Why are you smiling?  
**Roxy** Dad's got plane tickets to Lanzarote! We're going to stay near the beach in the south of the island ... Hi, Matt.  
**Cal** Oh yeah? Wow. Cool!  
**Matt** When are you going?  
**Roxy** Next month. We're going for two weeks!  
**Cal** *[Lily arrives]* Hey, Lily! I'm going to practise my Spanish in the Canaries!  
**Lily** Oh. Well, have fun. Nicky! Wait for me. See you! *[Lily goes]*  
**Roxy** Oh. That's strange. Is Lily OK?  
**Cal** I don't know, but you're right, Lily was strange ...

### The other side of the playground

**Lily** Hi, Nicky. What are you doing?  
**Nicky** I'm sitting here in the sun, imagining I'm on holiday and it's hot ...  
**Lily** OK ... well, I'm going for a walk.  
**Nicky** Wait a moment! What's the matter?  
**Lily** Well ... I'm not going on holiday this year, my parents can't afford it. And ...

**Nicky** And Cal's going to be away?  
**Lily** No! Yes, he is but ... why did you ask?  
**Nicky** Nothing. Where did you go last year? Did you go on holiday last year?  
**Lily** Yes, we did. We went to my uncle's house. There's a river near his house and you can go swimming.  
**Nicky** I love swimming!  
**Lily** My brother jumped in the river and lost his shorts! I laughed! But this year ...  
**Nicky** How about coming with me? We aren't going on holiday but we're going on trips and we're going to do different activities like canoeing, badminton, archery ... Do you want to come?  
**Lily** Nicky, you're amazing! I'm going to phone my parents and ask them.

### A bench in the playground

**Roxy** I love the beach! Swimming, volleyball, water sports ...  
**Cal** Ice cream ...  
**Roxy** We're going to the Canaries, Callum! We must visit the volcano, and try the fruit. They've got amazing fruit. And I *must* ride a camel.  
**Cal** I must take a photo of you on a camel and send it to Nicky, Lily, Matt ...  
**Roxy** Oh no you mustn't! I'm going to take your mobile so you can't! *[Lily arrives]* Hi Lily. Was the film good?  
**Lily** Hi. Yes, thanks Roxy.  
**Nicky** Film? What film?  
**Roxy** Lily went to the cinema on Saturday ...  
**Matt** Are we going to celebrate the end of school?  
**Nicky** Oh yes! When?  
**Roxy** After the exams.  
**Matt** Let's organize a party.  
**Lily** For five people ...  
**Nicky** A party for five people! Let's have a no-beach party!  
**Roxy** A no-beach party?  
**Nicky** A beach party with no beach. Food, music, friends ... It's going to be amazing! Here comes summer ... *[Others laugh]*



# Extra contents

- |   |   |  |      |
|---|---|--|------|
| 1 |    | Language                               | p130 |
| 2 |    | Art                                    | p132 |
| 3 |    | Information & Communication Technology | p134 |
| 4 |    | Maths                                  | p136 |
| 5 |   | Science                                | p138 |
| 6 |  | Geography (Population)                 | p140 |
| 7 |  | History                                | p142 |
| 8 |  | Physical Education                     | p144 |
| 9 |  | Geography (Climate)                    | p146 |
|   |   | Dictionary                             | p148 |
|   |   | Irregular verbs                        | p160 |



# Across the curriculum

## New English words

1 Match the words with the pictures.  
Are the words similar in your language?

tea piano zebra pyjamas chocolate algebra



## The origin of English words

Pre-Roman times	Early people in Britain speak Celtic.
1st century AD	Romans invade Britain. Latin is the language of the Roman Empire.
5th century AD	Germanic tribes invade from continental Europe and speak Old English. The word <i>English</i> comes from the Angles, the name of one of the tribes. Modern English words like <i>water</i> and <i>strong</i> come from Old English. The Vikings invade and introduce new words.
1066 AD	The Normans invade Britain and French becomes the official language. The English language changes and imports many words from French, for example <i>beef</i> .
1600	Modern English has its roots in the time of Shakespeare. Latin and Greek have a big influence because they are the languages for scholars. English uses many Latin words ending in <i>-us</i> or <i>-um</i> , for example <i>curriculum</i> and <i>circus</i> . Words that end in <i>-ology</i> (the study of) and <i>-phobia</i> (the irrational fear of) originate from Greek words, for example <i>biology</i> and <i>arachnophobia</i> .
16th century to 19th century	Explorers and travellers bring many new words from around the world: words for animals ( <i>zebra</i> from Kongo, an African language), food ( <i>chocolate</i> from Nahuatl, the Aztec language), clothes ( <i>pyjamas</i> from Hindi in India), drinks ( <i>tea</i> from Chinese), mathematical terms ( <i>algebra</i> from Arabic) and musical terms ( <i>piano</i> from Italian).
Today	The English language continues to grow, especially with new words in science and technology, for example <i>microchip</i> and <i>cyberspace</i> .

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 Where does the word <i>English</i> come from?      | 4 What language does the word <i>chocolate</i> come from? |
| 2 Which two words come from Old English?             | 5 What word comes from Hindi?                             |
| 3 Where does the English word <i>beef</i> come from? | 6 Where does the word <i>algebra</i> come from?           |

3 Read the text again and look at these words. Do you think their origin is Latin or Greek? Copy the table and write each word in the correct column.

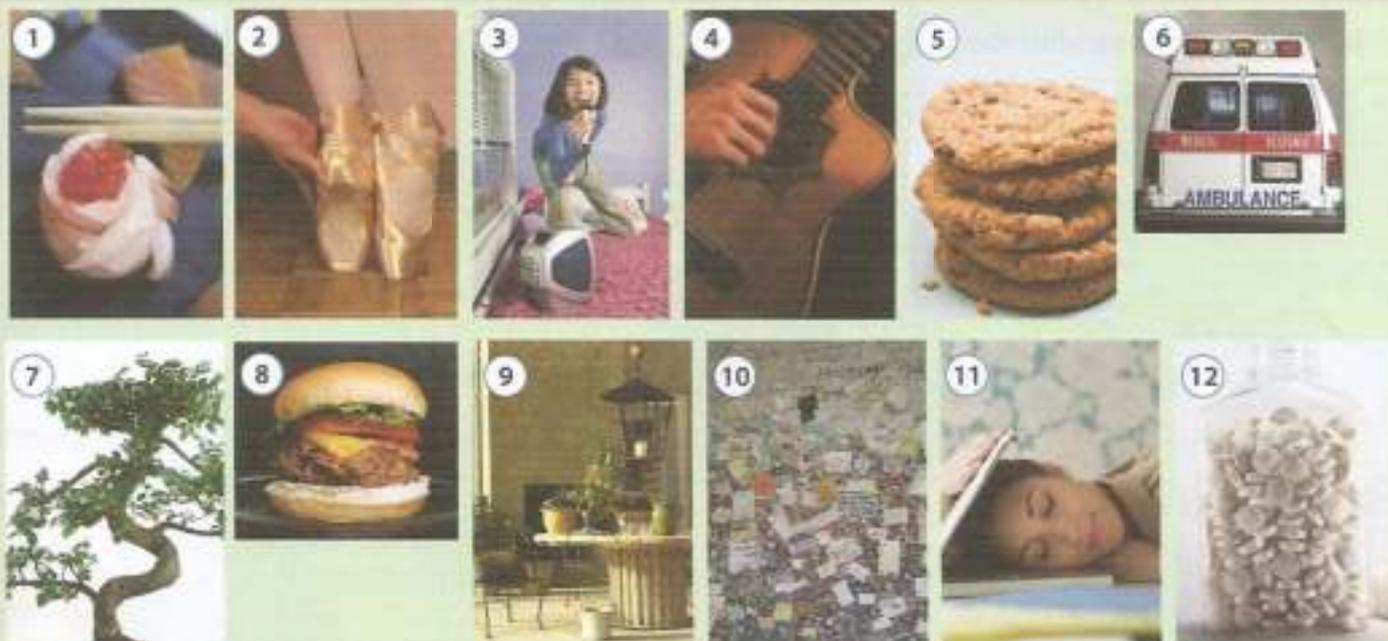
abacus astrology agoraphobia museum aquarium claustrophobia mythology cactus

Latin words	Translation	Greek words	Translation

## Language

- 4 Are the words in exercise 3 similar in your language? Write the translations.  
5 Match the words with the pictures.

karaoke    bonsai    patio    sushi    aspirin    biscuit    ballet    vandal    hamburger    ambulance    guitar    siesta



- 6 Which languages do the words come from? Copy the table and write each word in the correct column.

Spanish	French	Japanese	German

## Project

Do a project about the origin of words. Find words in your language that have their origin in English.

### Plan

Write down all the words you can think of in your language that have their origin in English. Here are a few clues to help you:

food    computers & technology    sport  
transport    music & film

Ask your friends and family to help.

### Research

Look for information in books or on the Internet.

### Prepare

Make a poster of English words that are used in your language and illustrate your poster.

### Present your material

Show your completed poster to your classmates and teacher.



# Across the curriculum

## Techniques

1 Match the pictures with the definitions.



1 You mix **oil paints** from tubes and paint on a canvas.

2 You add water to **watercolour paints** and use them on paper.

3 You cut up pieces of paper and other materials and stick them down to make a **collage**.

4 You use **charcoal** to sketch a **drawing**.

5 You use a special pen or brush and coloured inks to make an **ink drawing**.

6 You use a camera to take a **photograph**.

## Family portraits

2 Look at the paintings of families and read the information. In your notebook, write the correct information about each painting.



2 The title of the painting is 'The Painter's Family'.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 1 Francisco Goya completed this painting between 1800–01.
- 2 The title of the painting is 'The Painter's Family'.
- 3 Henri Matisse painted it in 1911.
- 4 This oil on canvas shows the royal family on a visit to the artist's studio.
- 5 The artist's sons in red costumes play draughts.
- 6 The artist is also in the painting. He is on the left, next to his canvas.
- 7 The painting represents Matisse's love of patterns and bold colours.
- 8 The family have servants and beautiful clothes.
- 9 The title is 'Charles IV of Spain and his family'.
- 10 The oil on canvas shows the painter's family (his wife and children) at home.

1 Francisco Goya completed this painting between 1800-01.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

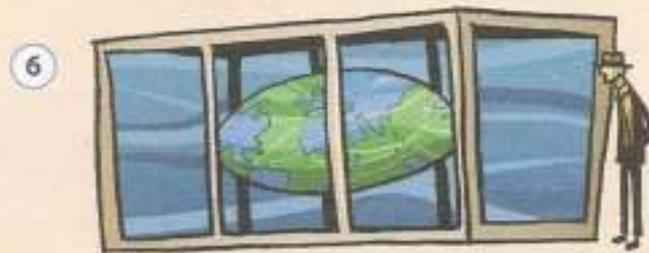
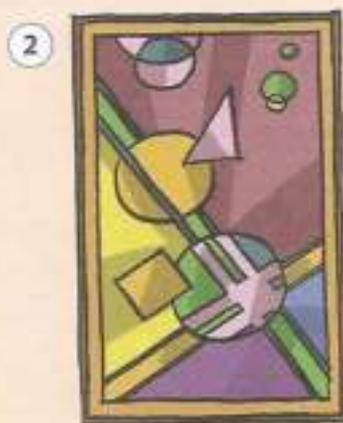
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## Art forms

Match the art forms with the pictures.

still life landscape abstract sculpture portrait installation



In your notebook, write an example for each of the categories from art that you know.

portrait ..... *The Mona Lisa* .....  
 abstract .....  
 sculpture .....

landscape .....  
 still life .....  
 installation .....

### Project

Find a famous painting of a family and describe it.

#### Plan

Look for a famous family portrait and think about these questions:

- Who is the artist?
- What is the date of the painting?
- Who are the people in the painting?
- Where are the people in the painting and what does this tell us about them?
- What techniques does the artist use?

#### Research

Look on the Internet or in books for information about the painting you choose.

#### Prepare

Write a description of the painting. Either get a photograph of the painting or make your own version but in a different technique!

#### Present your material

Make a poster to display in your classroom and talk about with your class.



# Across the curriculum

## Keyboard

1 Match the keys on this keyboard with the words from the box.

shift   escape   @   directional keys  
hyphen   enter   delete   space bar



2 Which key do you use when you want to ...

- 1 write a letter in capital letters?
- 2 remove a word?
- 3 make a space between two words?
- 4 write the symbol for *at* in an email address?
- 5 join two words together, like *brown-eyed*?
- 6 exit from a program that is not working correctly?
- 7 start a new line?
- 8 move the cursor up or down, left or right?

## Computer viruses

3 Read the questions about computer viruses. How many of the questions can you answer?

- 1 What is a virus?
- 2 How do you get a virus in your computer?
- 3 How does a virus spread?
- 4 How many computer viruses are there?
- 5 What damage does a virus do?
- 6 How can you stop viruses damaging your files?



4 Match the questions from exercise 3 with these answers.

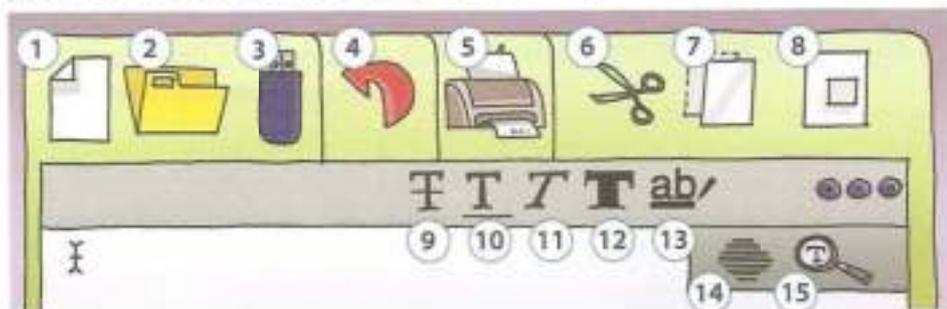
- a) The most common way to get a virus is through an email attachment.
- b) You can try to stop them with anti-virus software.
- c) It spreads by attaching itself to files.
- d) There are tens of thousands and more every minute.
- e) It is a program that prevents a computer from working normally.
- f) Some virus damage is insignificant but some can destroy or change the data or the programs.

# Information & Communication Technology (ICT)

## Word processing

5 Read the text and match the words below with the parts of the tool bar.

Most computers have a word processing program installed. The tools on a word processing program appear on a tool bar across the top of your computer screen.



new document	italics	highlight	paste	open a file
copy	cut	save	underline	print
zoom	bold	centre	undo	strikethrough

6 Use a word processing program to copy the following text so it looks exactly the same.

I have a computer **at home** that I share with the rest of my family *and I go on the computer nearly every day.* Sometimes I **play games** but I also talk to friends with instant messaging and about once a week I use the computer to do my *homework*. My mum travels a lot and she buys all her aeroplane tickets online.

### Project

Write a short text and use word processing tools to edit it.

#### Plan

Write a short text about the computers you use. Answer these questions:

- Do you use a computer at home or at school?
- How often do you use the computer?
- What do you use the computer for?

#### Research

Use the Internet to find tips on using a word processing program. Try this link: [www.jegsworks.com/Lessons/words/basics/index.html](http://www.jegsworks.com/Lessons/words/basics/index.html)

#### Prepare

Now use the word processing tools to make the text look as good as possible. For example:

- use different fonts and sizes
- put some words in bold or italics
- use underline
- include some colour.

#### Present your material

Print out your document and show it to your teacher and classmates.

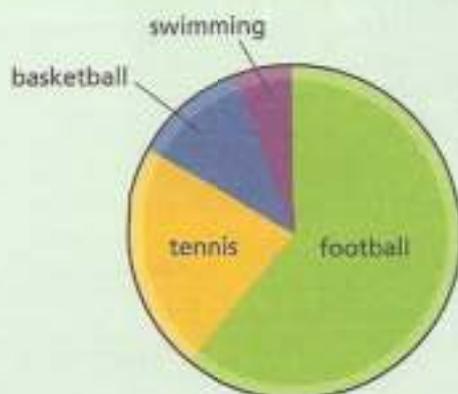


# Across the curriculum

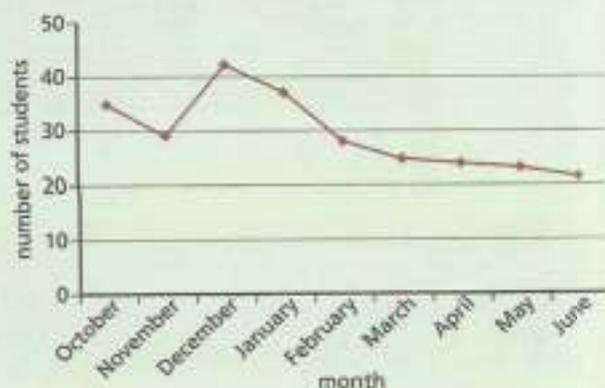
## Data

We can collect data by observation, by experiment or by questionnaires. Once we have the data we can show it in different ways.

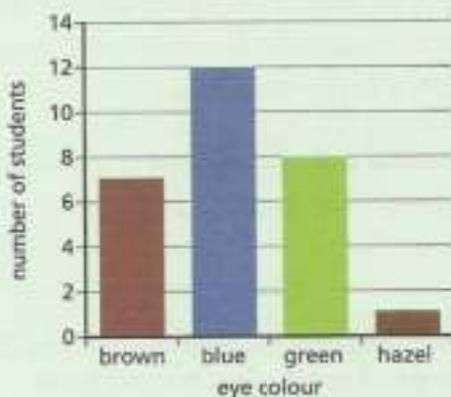
1 Complete the diagram descriptions with these words. histogram   line graph   pie chart   bar



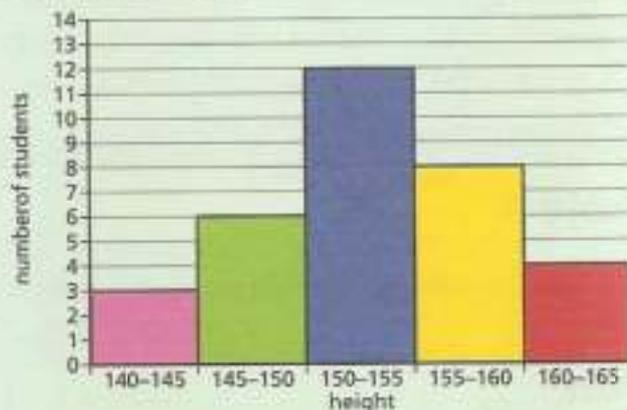
A ... to show favourite sports of 30 students in class 10BJ.



A ... to show number of students from classes 10BJ and 10XF who had school dinners between October and June.



A ... to show eye colour of students in class 10BJ.



A ... to show height of students in class 10BJ.

2 Look at the diagrams in exercise 1. Say if the statements are true or false.

- The favourite sport of students in class 10BJ is swimming.
- More students in class 10BJ enjoy tennis more than basketball.
- No one in class 10XF is less than 145 cm tall.
- Most students are between 155–160 cm tall.
- Fewer students had school dinner in October than in June.
- The number of students having school dinner decreased through the year.
- Most students in class 10BJ have brown eyes.
- The total number of students in class 10BJ is 33.

## Drawing pie charts

A pie chart is a circle divided into different sectors and it is a good way to make quick comparisons. We can make two pie charts to compare preferences of boys and girls from the following data.

- 3 Copy and complete the table with the total number of boys and girls in class 9CT.

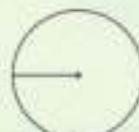
favourite sport	girls	boys
football	4	9
swimming	7	6
tennis	7	3
	... (girls)	... (boys)

Before we can draw the pie charts we need to calculate the ANGLE of the sector representing each sport. To find this, we need to know the FRACTION of the students who prefer each sport and then multiply the fraction by 360 degrees.

- 4 Copy and complete the table with the angles.

favourite sport	girls	ANGLE	boys	ANGLE
football	$4/18 \times 360$	...	$9/18 \times 360$	...
swimming	$7/18 \times 360$	140	$6/18 \times 360$	120
tennis	$7/18 \times 360$	140	$3/18 \times 360$	...

- a) Draw a circle and a radius.



- b) Measure the angles carefully with a protractor.



- c) The completed pie chart for girls looks like this.



- 5 Draw the two pie charts in your notebook.

## Project

Write a questionnaire for your class to find out what they think about school. Show the data using different kinds of diagrams.

### Plan

Write a questionnaire for your classmates. You could include questions like these:

- Which school subject do you like best?
  - Maths
  - English
  - PE
- How much time do you spend each week doing homework?
  - less than one hour
  - between one hour and three hours
  - more than three hours but less than six hours
- Which school subject do you find most difficult?
  - Maths
  - English
  - Science

## Research

Put the data into a table like this.

- 1 Which school subject do you like best?

	Maths	English	PE
boys	7	5	11
girls	5	6	12

## Prepare

Decide on the best way to show your data using different kinds of diagrams. Draw the diagrams.

## Present your material

Put your graphs on a poster and write a short text to explain what you found.

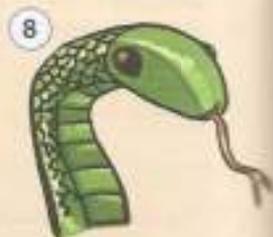
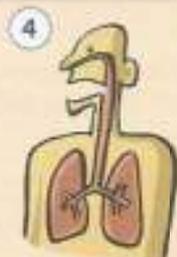


# Across the curriculum

## Animals

1 Match the words with the pictures.

fur wings hair gills feathers eggs scales lungs



2 Complete the sentences with the words from exercise 1.

- 1 An eagle has two ... and is covered with ...
- 2 A cat is covered with ... but a gorilla has ...
- 3 A salmon is covered with ... and uses ... to breathe.
- 4 An orang-utan breathes through two ...
- 5 Some baby animals (for example eagles) come from ...

## Vertebrates

3 Complete the texts with these words.

Reptiles Amphibians Mammals Fish Birds

- 1 ... use lungs to breathe. They have dry skin with scales and they lay eggs. They are cold-blooded. Turtles belong in this group.
- 2 ... use lungs to breathe. They are warm-blooded and they have hair or fur. They give birth to live young. Humans belong in this group.
- 3 ... are warm-blooded. They have feathers. They lay eggs with hard shells. They have wings and breathe through lungs. Eagles belong in this group.

4 Copy the table and write the names of these animals in the correct column.

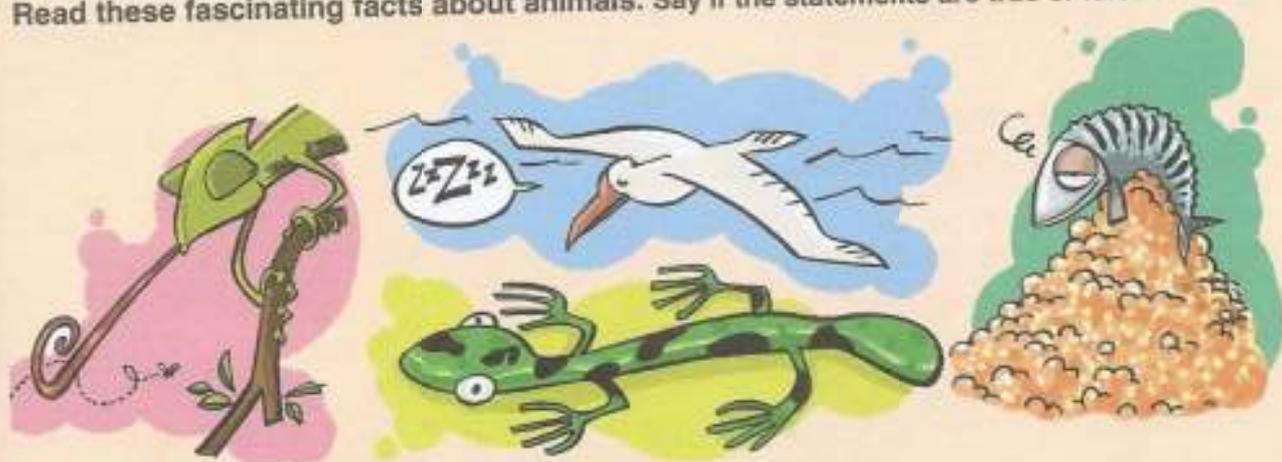
reptiles	amphibians	fish	birds	mammals

Look! Animals are either **vertebrates** – with a backbone, or **invertebrates** – without a backbone. There are five groups of vertebrates.

- 4 ... are cold-blooded. Their skin is wet. The young have gills but adults have lungs. They lay their eggs in water. Frogs belong in this group.
- 5 ... are cold-blooded too. They have gills and live in water. They lay their eggs in water and they have wet scales. Sardines belong in this group.



5 Read these fascinating facts about animals. Say if the statements are true or false.



- 1 A chameleon's tongue is four times as long as its body.
  - 2 A chimpanzee can learn to recognize itself in a mirror.
  - 3 A female mackerel lays about 500 000 eggs at one time.
  - 4 A baby kangaroo is about 20 cm long.
  - 5 An albatross can sleep while it flies.
  - 6 An iguana can stay under water for 40 minutes.
  - 7 Salamanders have four toes on each foot.
  - 8 A cow gives nearly 200 000 glasses of milk in its lifetime.
- 6 Add the names of the animals from exercise 5 to the groups in exercise 4. Then add one more animal to each group.

## Project

Do a project about an animal.

### Plan

Choose an animal from your completed table in exercise 4.

### Research

Use the Internet to find out information about this animal. Make notes about these things:

- What animal group does it belong to? (mammals, reptiles, etc)
- What does it look like? (scales, fur, etc)
- Does it lay eggs?
- Where does it live? (on land, in the water, etc)
- Are there any interesting facts about this animal?

### Prepare

Make a poster about your animal. Include a picture and all of the information you found on the Internet. Don't write one long text — use sub-headings to organize the information into different sections.

### Present your material

Show your completed poster to your classmates and teacher.



# Across the curriculum

## Where we live

1 Copy the diagram and label it with these words.

village town city rural urban



2 Complete the text with these words.

commute farm services shop

One in four people in the United Kingdom live in rural areas. Some people live in single houses, for example a (1) ... , and others live in villages where there are a few houses and small number of (2) ... , for example a (3) ... and post office. Many villages near towns are growing because people can (4) ... to work. This means that they regularly travel a long way from their homes to get to work.

## Urbanisation

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

People all over the world are moving from rural homes to cities. Urbanisation is when the percentage of people living in cities goes up. This is happening very rapidly in the world today because many people are moving from rural areas to the cities. In 1800, only about 3% of the total world population lived in cities, but now almost half of the people in the world live in cities.

In 1900 only two cities had more than 1 million inhabitants (millionaire cities). Today there are more than 300 millionaire cities in the world.

Megacities have more than 10 million people living there. In 2015 experts think that the world will have 27 megacities.

- 1 What percentage of the world's population today live in cities?
- 2 What is a millionaire city?
- 3 How many millionaire cities were there in 1900?
- 4 How many millionaire cities are there today?
- 5 What is a megacity?

# Geography

- 4 Look at the information about the world's urban population. 1 is the biggest. Say if the statements are true or false.

## World's urban population

1950  
730 million

1970  
1,350 million

1990  
2,380 million

North-South divide

## World's ten biggest cities



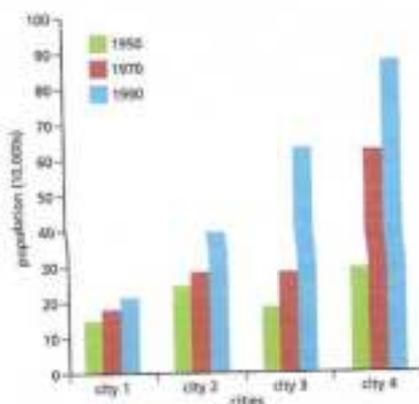
- 1 In 1950 the world's urban population was about 730 million people.
- 2 The world's urban population is getting smaller.
- 3 In 1990 most of the world's ten biggest cities were south of the North-South divide.
- 4 In 1970 the world's biggest city was New York.
- 5 In 1990 the world's biggest city was Mumbai in India.
- 6 In 1990 the world's urban population was 1,350 million people.

## Project

Find some facts about the population in your country and describe where you live.

### Plan

Think about the place where you live. Do you live in a rural or urban home? Are there many services where you live? Choose the four biggest cities in your country. Prepare to make a graph to show the changes in population of the cities (use an appropriate scale).



### Research

Find out about the population of the biggest cities in your country in 1950 and 2000.

### Prepare

Put the information about the cities on the graph and write a short text to describe the place where you live and the biggest cities in your country.

### Present your material

Put the information on a poster and compare with your classmates.

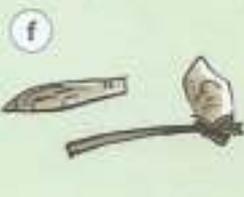


# Across the curriculum

## Prehistoric times

1 Match the words with the pictures.

- 1 hut
- 2 axes and knives
- 3 bow and arrows
- 4 spear
- 5 cave painting
- 6 bones
- 7 shells
- 8 jewellery



## Cro-Magnons

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

### When and where they lived

The Cro-Magnons were prehistoric people. They lived in Europe from between 35 000 to 10 000 years ago.

### Home life

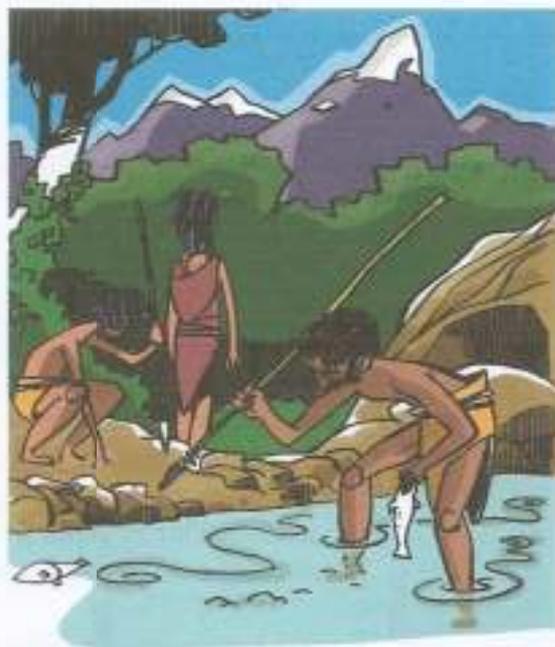
They lived together in small groups and made their homes in caves or huts. Sometimes their huts were long and had separate rooms with a fire in each one.

### Tools and weapons

The Cro-Magnons made a lot of different tools. They used stone and animal bones to make axes, knives, bows and arrows. They invented the first spears for hunting animals. Cro-Magnons hunted alone and also in small groups.

### Culture

The Cro-Magnons painted on the walls of their caves and they made simple sculptures. They also made flutes from bones and were probably the first musicians. They made clothes from animal skins and in hot weather they wore clothes made from dried grass. Some Cro-Magnons made jewellery from shells, feathers and flowers. Some decorated their bodies with tattoos.



### Food

The Cro-Magnons had a healthy diet. They ate meat, cereals and root vegetables. They also caught fish.

- 1 When did the Cro-Magnons live?
- 2 Where did they live?
- 3 What were their houses like?

- 4 What did they invent?
- 5 What did they wear when it was hot?
- 6 What did they eat?

## Cave paintings

There are cave paintings in many places in Europe, for example Altamira in Spain and Kapova in Russia. Some of the most famous are at Lascaux in France.

Four teenagers discovered the cave paintings at Lascaux in 1940. Experts believe that the paintings are 17 000 years old. There are paintings of animals that lived in the area, for example bulls and bears, as well as humans.

Thousands of people wanted to see the marvellous cave paintings and more than 1200 people visited the caves every day. However, this number of visitors was not good for the paintings and in 1963 the authorities closed the caves.

In 1983, Lascaux II opened. It's a cave with exact copies of the original cave paintings and everybody can visit it.



### 3 Choose the correct answers.

- |  |                                     |                   |                       |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Lascaux is in ...                        | a) Spain.                           | b) France.        | c) Russia.            |
| 2 There are ... in Lascaux.                | a) animals                          | b) cave paintings | c) humans             |
| 3 Lascaux had over ... visitors every day. | a) 17 000                           | b) 1963           | c) 1200               |
| 4 Lascaux closed in ...                    | a) 1983.                            | b) 1940.          | c) 1963.              |
| 5 There are ... in Lascaux II.             | a) copies of the original paintings | b) real animals   | c) dangerous tourists |

### Project

Do a project about another group of prehistoric people called Homo Habilis.

#### Plan

Decide what information you want to find out.

#### Research

Find some information about Homo Habilis.  
Try this link:  
<http://earlyhumans.mrdonn.org/tools.html>

#### Prepare

Make some notes about when and where they lived, tools and weapons, culture, food.

#### Present your material

Write a text about Homo Habilis and draw some pictures to illustrate your text.

Take your project to class and show it to your teacher and your classmates.



# Across the curriculum

## Sports equipment

1 Match the objects with the pictures.

- 1 a cricket ball
- 2 a cricket bat
- 3 a baseball bat
- 4 a baseball glove
- 5 a wicket
- 6 a mallet



## Sports from around the world

2 Read the descriptions and match them with the pictures.

### Sport Cricket

**Where is this sport most popular?** England, Australia, Pakistan, India, the West Indies.

**What do you need to play?** A cricket bat, a cricket ball, wickets.

**Brief description** Two teams of 11 players each play on grass. Teams earn points when they hit the ball and run between the wickets.

### Sport Polo

**Where is this sport most popular?** Argentina, the UK, the USA, India.

**What do you need to play?** A horse, a mallet and a ball.

**Brief description** Two teams of four players each play on grass. Teams score points when they hit the ball between two goals. In the traditional game players ride horses, but now some people play on bikes, canoes and even elephants!



3 Read the descriptions again and answer the questions.

- 1 Which sport do you play with a mallet?
- 2 Which sport uses wickets?
- 3 In which sports do you use a bat?
- 4 Which sport has the most players in a team?
- 5 In which sport do you wear gloves?
- 6 How many players are there in a game of baseball?
- 7 Which sport do you play on a horse?

### Sport Baseball

**Where is this sport most popular?** The USA, Japan, Australia and Canada.

**What do you need to play?** A baseball, gloves and a bat.

**Brief description** Two teams of nine players each play on grass. Teams score points when they hit the ball and run around four bases.

# Physical Education (PE)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

## Heart rate

When we do sports or any exercise, our muscles need more oxygen. Oxygen travels around the body in the blood and it is the heart which pumps blood round the body – it needs to be strong to do this. The heart muscle contracts or beats automatically and this is your heart rate. In adults this heart rate is normally about 70 beats per minute. For children, the heart rate is about 100 beats per minute. When we do exercise our heart rate goes up because the heart beats faster, so that more oxygen can travel to the muscles that need it.

- 1 How does oxygen travel around the body?
- 2 What is the normal heart rate for adults?
- 3 What is the normal heart rate in children?
- 4 What happens to the heart rate when we exercise?

## Project

Test your heart rate when you exercise and show your results to your classmates and teacher.

### Plan

Copy this table in your notebook.

Heartbeat experiment	
Number of heartbeats per minute when relaxed	
Number of heartbeats per minute after doing some activity	
Number of heartbeats per minute after doing a lot of activity	

### Research



Find your normal heart rate:

- 1 Find your pulse on your wrist. Count how many times your heart beats in 30 seconds.
- 2 Multiply the number by two to find your normal heart rate.
- 3 Make a note of this number in the table.

### Prepare

- 1 Walk around the room for one minute. Take your pulse again and make a note of your heart rate.
- 2 Now run as fast as you can for two minutes.
- 3 Take your pulse again and make a note of your heart rate.
- 4 Fill in the table with your heart rate results.

### Present your material

Make a graph to show the changes in your heart rate with activity. Write a description of the experiment and compare with your classmates.

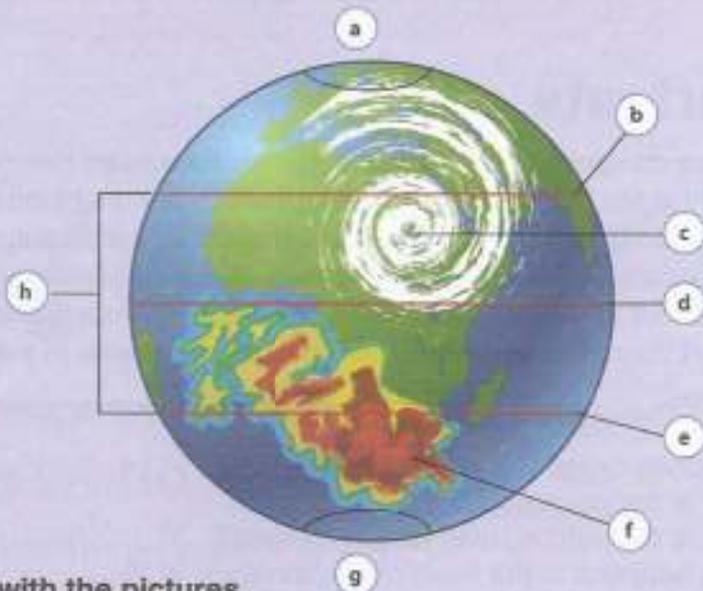


# Across the curriculum

## Climate zones

1 Match the words with the pictures.

- |                    |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 South Pole       | 5 Tropic of Capricorn |
| 2 North Pole       | 6 The tropics         |
| 3 Equator          | 7 Storm               |
| 4 Tropic of Cancer | 8 Hurricanes          |



## Different climates

2 Read the descriptions and match them with the pictures.

(1) **Tropical climates** have high temperatures all year and high rainfall. Tropical areas are usually near the Equator. There are often storms and hurricanes in these areas.



(2) **Monsoon climates** have two seasons – wet and dry – but it is always warm. South east Asia, India and parts of Africa and South America have this type of climate.



(3) **Dry climates** have very low rainfall. The temperatures can be very hot or very cold. Deserts have this climate. A desert is any place with less than 250 mm of rain per year.



(4) In most of Europe and North America we have a **warm climate** – it isn't too cold in winter or too hot in summer and it rains moderately. Parts of China and Australia also have this climate. This is the best climate for agriculture.

(5) **Cool climates** are in the far north of Europe and North America and the far south of South America and New Zealand. Here, the winters are longer and colder than in the warm climate areas.

(6) **Cold climates** have an average temperature of 0°C and are frozen all year round. The rainfall is low in these areas. Cold climate zones are situated at the Poles (North and South) and at the top of very high mountains.

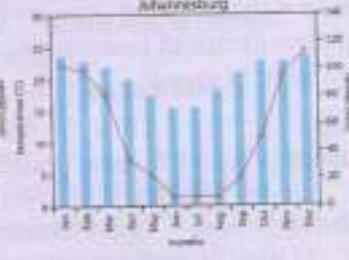
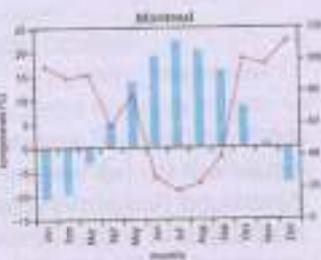
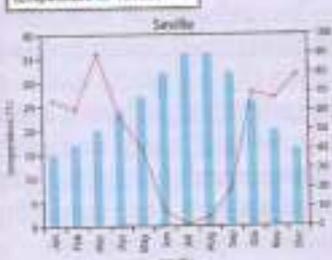
3 Choose the correct answers.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Tropical climates have ...<br>a) high rainfall. b) low rainfall. c) no rainfall. | 4 A desert has less than ... mm of rainfall per year.<br>a) 100 b) 50 c) 250                               |
| 2 The North Pole has got a ... climate.<br>a) cool b) tropical c) cold             | 5 The best climate for agriculture is a ...<br>a) monsoon climate.<br>b) warm climate.<br>c) cold climate. |
| 3 Monsoon climates have ... seasons.<br>a) two b) three c) four                    |  |

## Climate graphs

4 Look at the climate graphs. Say if the statements are true or false.

KEY  
temperature —●—  
rainfall —■—



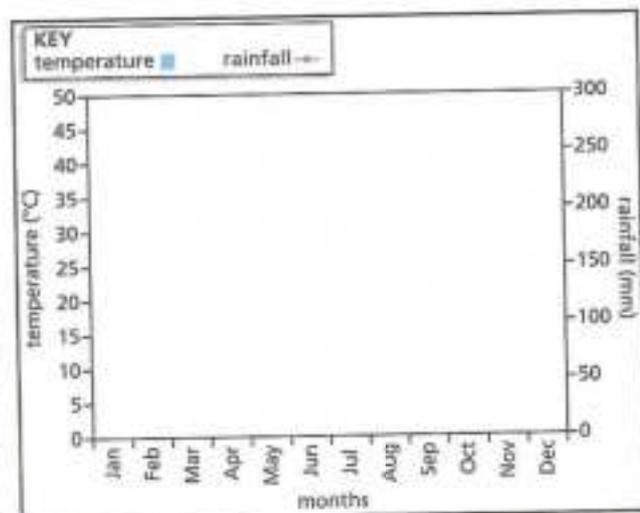
- 1 It rains a lot in Montreal in the summer.
- 2 It is never above 40°C in Seville.
- 3 The temperature changes every month in Singapore.
- 4 It is always between 10°C and 20°C in Johannesburg.
- 5 March is the rainiest month in Seville.
- 6 In Singapore it rains a lot every month.
- 7 In Montreal, the winters are cold but the summers are hot.
- 8 The driest month in Johannesburg is May.

## Project

You are going to make two climate graphs, one for your home city and one for a city in another climate zone.

### Plan

- 1 Make two copies of the climate graph below.
- 2 Write the name of your city on one graph. Write the name of another city on the second graph.



## Research

Find the information about rainfall and temperature in the two cities from newspapers, on the radio or TV or on the Internet, for example:

[www.met.gov.uk/index.html](http://www.met.gov.uk/index.html)  
[www.worldclimate.com](http://www.worldclimate.com)  
[www.bbc.co.uk/weather](http://www.bbc.co.uk/weather)

## Prepare

Complete the graphs for each month.

- 1 Record the rainfall by marking with a point in the appropriate places.
- 2 Shade in the monthly temperature.

Don't forget to draw a line between all the rainfall points.

## Present your material

Write a short text about the rainfall and temperature in the two cities and show it to your classmates and teacher.

# Dictionary

## Условные обозначения:

- adj = adjective (прилагательное)  
adv = adverb (наречие)  
conj = conjunction (союз)  
deter = determiner (определяющее слово)  
interj = interjection (междометие)  
n = noun (существительное)  
phr v = phrasal verb (фразовый глагол)  
prep = preposition (предлог)  
pron = pronoun (местоимение)  
v = verb (глагол)

## Aa

- about** [ə'baʊt] 1. (adv) приблизительно, около, почти; 2. (prep) о, насчёт  
**above** [ə'baʊv] 1. (adv) наверху, вверху; 2. (prep) 1) над; 2) больше чем, выше  
**accent** (n) ['æksənt] акцент, произношение  
**accommodation** (n) [ə,kɒmə'deɪʃn] жильё, помещение  
**accordion** (n) [ə'kɔːdiən] аккордеон  
**acrobat** (n) ['ækrəbæt] акробат  
**act** (v) [ækt] театр. играть, исполнять роль  
**activity** (n) [æk'tɪvəti] действие; деятельность; мероприятие  
**actor** (n) ['æktə] актёр  
**(in) addition (to)** [(ɪn) ə'dɪʃn (tuː)] в добавление  
**address** (n) [ə'dres] адрес  
**adopt** (v) [ə'dɒpt] взять на воспитание (животное)  
**adventure** (n) [əd'ventʃə] приключение  
**aerobics** (n) [eə'reʊbɪks] аэробика  
**afraid** (adj) [ə'freɪd] испуганный, напуганный; боящийся  
**afterlife** (n) ['ɑːftəlaɪf] загробная жизнь  
**afternoon** (n) [ɑːftə'nuːn] дневное время  
**age** (n) [eɪdʒ] возраст  
**alone** (adj) [ə'ləʊn] 1) один, одинокий; 2) в одиночку  
**always** (adv) ['ɔːlweɪz] всегда  
**amazed** (adj) [ə'meɪzd] изумлённый, поражённый  
**amazing** (adj) [ə'meɪzɪŋ] изумительный, поразительный, удивительный  
**American** [ə'merɪkən] 1. (adj) американский; 2. (n) американец; американка  
**amputate** (v) ['æmpjuteɪt] ампутировать, отнимать  
**amusement park** (n) [ə'mjuːzmənt paːk] луна-парк  
**ancient** (adj) ['eɪnʃənt] древний  
**Anglo-Saxon** (adj) [ˌæŋɡləʊ'sæksn] англосаксонский  
**animal** (n) ['ænɪml] животное  
**anorexic** (adj) [ˌænə'reksɪk] страдающий анорексией  
**answer** (v) [ɑːnsə] ответ  
**ant** (n) [ænt] муравей  
**anteater** (n) ['ænt,i:tə] муравьед  
**apple** (n) ['æpl] яблоко

- April** (n) ['eɪprəl] апрель  
**aquarium** (n) [æk'weəriəm] аквариум  
**Arabic** (n) ['æɾəbɪk] арабский язык  
**archery** (n) ['ɑːtʃəri] стрельба из лука  
**architect** (n) ['ɑːkɪtekt] архитектор  
**Argentina** (n) [ˌɑːdʒən'tiːnə] Аргентина  
**Argentinian** [ˌɑːdʒən'tɪniən] 1. (adj) аргентинский; 2. (n) аргентинец; аргентинка  
**arm** (n) [ɑːm] рука (от кисти до плеча)  
**around** (adv) [ə'raʊnd] вокруг, кругом; повсюду  
**Art and Design** (n) [ɑːt ən dɪ'zaɪn] Искусство и дизайн (учебный предмет)  
**artificial arm** (adj) [ˌɑːtɪ,fiʃl 'ɑːm] протез руки; искусственная рука  
**assistant** (n) [ə'sɪstənt] 1) помощник; 2) ассистент, сотрудник; 3) продавец  
**astronaut** (n) ['æstrənɔːt] астронавт  
**athlete** (n) ['æθli:t] атлет  
**athletics** (n) [æθ'letɪks] лёгкая атлетика  
**attack** (v) [ə'tæk] атаковать, нападать, штурмовать  
**attractive** (adj) [ə'træktɪv] привлекательный, приятный  
**August** (n) ['ɔːgəst] август  
**aunt** (n) [ɑːnt] тётя  
**Australia** (n) [ɒs'treɪliə] Австралия  
**Australian** [ɒs'treɪliən] 1. (adj) австралийский; 2. (n) австралиец; австралийка  
**Austrian** (adj) ['ɒstriən] 1. (adj) австрийский; 2. (n) австриец; австрийка  
**autumn** (n) ['ɔːtəm] осень  
**average** (adj) ['ævərɪdʒ] 1) средний; 2) обычный

## Bb

- back** (n) [bæk] спина  
**bacon** (n) ['beɪkən] бекон, копчёная свиная грудинка  
**bad** (adj) [bæd] 1) дурной, плохой; 2) неприятный; злоеющий  
**badly** (adv) ['bædli] плохо  
**badminton** (n) ['bædmɪntən] бадминтон  
**bag** (n) [bæg] сумка; пакет  
**baked potato** (n) [ˌbeɪkt pə'teɪtəʊ] печёный картофель  
**ball** (n) [bɔːl] мяч

**band** (n) [bænd] группа музыкантов, оркестр  
**baseball** (n) ['beɪsbɔ:l] бейсбол  
**base** (v) [beɪs] основывать, размещать /the novel is based in – действие романа происходит в/  
**basketball** (n) ['bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l] баскетбол  
**battle** (n) ['bætl] 1) битва, сражение, бой;  
2) поединок, схватка  
**beach** (n) [bi:tʃ] 1) (морской) берег; 2) пляж  
**bear** (n) [beə] медведь  
**because** (conj) [bi'kɔ:z] потому что, так как, поскольку  
**become** (v) [bi'kɒm] становиться, делаться  
**bedroom** (n) ['bed,ru:m] спальня  
**behind** (prep) [bi'haɪnd] сзади, позади  
**believe** (v) [bi'li:v] 1) верить; 2) думать, полагать  
**best** [best] 1. (adj) лучший; 2. (adv) больше всего  
**between** (prep) [bi'twi:n] между  
**big** (adj) [bɪg] большой, крупный  
**bilingual** (adj) [baɪ'lɪŋgwəl] говорящий на двух языках  
**bill** (n) [bɪl] клюв  
**bird** (n) [bɜ:d] птица  
**birthday** (n) ['bɜ:θdeɪ] день рождения  
**birthday card** (n) ['bɜ:θdeɪ ,kɑ:d] открытка ко дню рождения  
**birthday present** (n) ['bɜ:θdeɪ ,prezənt] подарок ко дню рождения  
**black** (adj) [blæk] чёрный  
**blue** (adj) [blu:] синий; голубой  
**board** (n) [bɔ:d] 1) (классная) доска /message board – доска объявлений (на интернет-сайте); 2) борт (морского или воздушного судна) /on board – на борту/  
**boat** (n) [bəʊt] лодка; судно, корабль  
**bone** (n) [bəʊn] кость  
**book** (n) [bʊk] книга  
**boot** (n) [bu:t] ботинок; сапог  
**boring** (adj) ['bɔ:ɪŋ] неинтересный, скучный  
**born** (adj) [bɔ:n] родившийся, появившийся на свет /be born – родиться/  
**box** (n) [bɒks] 1) коробка, ящик; 2) коробочка; 3) рамка  
**boyfriend** (n) ['bɔɪ,frend] бойфренд  
**Brazil** (n) [brə'zɪl] Бразилия  
**Brazilian** (n) [brə'zɪliən] бразилец; бразильянка  
**bread** (n) [bred] хлеб  
**break** (n) [breɪk] перерыв; перемена (в школе)  
**breathe** (v) [bri:ð] дышать; вдыхать, выдыхать  
**bring** (v) [brɪŋ] приносить, привозить  
**Britain** (n) ['brɪtɪn] Британия (неофициальное название Великобритании)  
**British** (adj) ['brɪtɪʃ] британский  
**brother** (n) ['brʌðə] брат  
**brother-in-law** (n) ['brʌðəɪn,lɔ:] зять (муж сестры); шурин (брат жены); свояк (муж свояченицы); деверь (брат мужа)  
**brown** (adj) [braʊn] коричневый  
**build** (v) [bɪld] строить; возводить  
**bull** (n) [bʊl] бык; буйвол

**bungee jumping** (n) ['bʌndʒɪ ,dʒʌmpɪŋ] банджи-джампинг (прыжок с большой высоты на эластичном тросе, обвязанном вокруг щиколотки)  
**bury** (v) ['beri] хоронить  
**butter** (n) ['bʌtə] масло  
**buy** (v) [baɪ] покупать

## Сс

**cabin** (n) ['kæbɪn] хижина  
**cake** (n) [keɪk] торт; пирожное; кекс  
**camp** (v) [kæmp] лагерь (спортивный, детский, учебный) /go camping – жить в палатках/  
**campsite** (n) ['kæmp,sɑɪt] палаточный лагерь  
**Canada** (n) ['kænədə] Канада  
**Canadian** [kə'neɪdiən] 1. (adj) канадский;  
2. (n) канадец; канадка  
**candle** (n) ['kændl] свеча  
**canoeing** (n) [kə'nu:ɪŋ] гребля на байдарках и каноэ  
**cap** (n) [kæp] кепка  
**capital city** (n) [kæpɪtl 'sɪti] столица  
**card** (n) [kɑ:d] членский билет  
**(be) careful** [(bi) 'keəfəl] быть осторожным  
**carnival** (n) ['kɑ:nɪvl] карнавал  
**carry** (v) ['kæəri] нести, носить  
**cash** (n) [kæʃ] (наличные) деньги  
**castle** (n) ['kɑ:sl] замок  
**cat** (n) [kæt] кот, кошка  
**catch** (v) [kætʃ] ловить; поймать  
**category** (n) ['kætəgəri] 1) вид; 2) номинация  
**cathedral** (n) [kə'θi:drəl] собор  
**cave** (n) [keɪv] пещера  
**CD player** (n) [si:'di: ,pleɪə] CD-плеер  
**celebrate** (v) ['selə,breɪt] праздновать  
**chain** (n) [tʃeɪn] цепь  
**chair** (n) [tʃeə] стул  
**change** [tʃeɪndʒ] 1. (n) 1) изменение; 2) сдача;  
2. (v) менять(ся), изменять(ся)  
**character** (n) ['kærɪktə] персонаж  
**charity** (n) ['tʃærəti] благотворительная организация  
**cheese** (n) [tʃi:z] сыр  
**cheeseburger** (n) ['tʃi:z,bɜ:gə] чизбургер  
**chicken** (n) ['tʃɪkɪn] цыплёнок /chicken soup – куриный суп/  
**China** (n) ['tʃaɪnə] Китай  
**Chinese** [tʃaɪ'ni:z] 1. (adj) китайский;  
2. (n) 1) китайский язык; 2) китаец; китайка  
**chips** (n) [tʃɪps] жаренный брусочками картофель  
**chocolate** (n) ['tʃɒklət] шоколад /hot chocolate – горячий шоколад/  
**Christmas** (n) ['krɪsməs] Рождество (Христово) (праздник)  
**cinema** (n) ['sɪnəmə] кино /go to the cinema – идти в кино/  
**circus show** (n) ['sɜ:kəs ,ʃəʊ] цирковое шоу  
**civil war** (n) [sɪvl 'wɔ:] гражданская война  
**class** (n) [klɑ:s] 1) группа, класс (в школе);  
2) занятие, урок; 3) класс, категория

**classmate** (n) ['kla:smet] одноклассник;  
одноклассница  
**classroom** (n) ['kla:sru:m] класс, классная комната  
**clean** (v) [kli:n] чистить /clean your teeth –  
(но)чистить зубы/  
**cliff** (n) [klɪf] отвесная скала; утёс  
**climate** (n) ['klaɪmət] климат  
**climb** (v) [klaɪm] взбираться, подниматься  
**close** (v) [kləʊz] 1) закрывать; 2) закрываться  
**cloudy** (adj) ['klaʊdi] облачно  
**club** (n) [klʌb] клуб  
**coast** (n) [kəʊst] морское побережье  
**cockroach** (n) ['kɒk,rəʊtʃ] таракан  
**cola** (n) ['kəʊlə] кола (*напиток*)  
**cold** (adj) [kəʊld] холодный  
**Colombia** (n) [kə'lʌmbiə] Колумбия  
**colourful** (adj) ['klɜ:lfl] яркий; красочный  
**comedy** (n) ['kɒmədi] комедия  
**comic** (n) ['kɒmɪk] комикс  
**committee** (n) [kə'mɪti] комитет  
**competition** (n) [kəmpe'tɪʃn] соревнование,  
соревнование  
**complete** (v) [kəm'pli:t] 1) заполнять; 2) завершать,  
заканчивать  
**composer** (n) [kəm'pəʊzə] композитор  
**computer** (n) [kəm'pjʊ:tə] компьютер  
**computer game** (n) [kəm'pjʊ:tə ,geɪm]  
компьютерная игра  
**concert** (n) ['kɒnsət] концерт  
**contact** (v) ['kɒntækt] связываться  
**costume** (n) ['kɒstju:m] костюм, одежда, платье  
**country** (n) ['kʌntri] страна  
**cousin** (n) [kʌzɪn] двоюродный брат, кузен;  
двоюродная сестра, кузина  
**cow** (n) [kaʊ] корова  
**craft** (n) [krɑ:ft] изделие ручной работы  
**creation** (n) [kri'eɪʃn] создание; творение  
**creature** (n) ['kri:tʃə] создание, существо  
**creepy-crawly** (n) [kri:'pi'krɔ:lɪ] гадкая букашка,  
ползучая тварь  
**cricket** (n) ['krɪkɪt] 1) сверчок; 2) крикет  
(*спортивная игра*)  
**crisps** (n) [krɪspz] чипсы  
**culture** (n) ['kʌltʃə] культура  
**cycling** (n) ['saɪklɪŋ] велосипедный спорт

## Dd

**dad** (n) [dæd] папа  
**dance** [da:ns] 1. (n) танец; 2. (v) танцевать  
**danger** (n) ['deɪndʒə] угроза, опасность  
**dangerous** (adj) ['deɪndʒərəs] опасный  
**dangerously** (adv) ['deɪndʒərəsli] опасно  
**dark** (adj) [dɑ:k] тёмный  
**date** (n) [deɪt] 1) дата; 2) данные  
**daughter** (n) ['dɔ:tə] дочь  
**day** (n) [deɪ] день  
**day out** (n) [deɪ 'aʊt] выходной день, проведённый  
вне дома  
**day trip** (n) ['deɪ ,trɪp] однодневная поездка;  
однодневная экскурсия

**death mask** (n) ['deθ ,mɑ:sk] посмертная маска  
**December** (n) [dɪ'sembə] декабрь  
**decide** (v) [dɪ'saɪd] решать, делать выбор  
**definitely** (adv) ['defənətli] определённо, точно, явно  
**degree** (n) [dɪ'ɡri:] градус (*мера температуры*)  
**delicious** (adj) [dɪ'liʃəs] очень вкусный  
**demolish** (v) [dɪ'mɒlɪʃ] разрушать  
**department** (n) [dɪ'pɑ:tmənt] отдел  
**department store** (n) [dɪ'pɑ:tmənt stɔ:] универсам  
**desert** (n) ['dezət] пустыня  
**design** [dɪ'zain] 1. (n) дизайн; 2. (v) проектировать  
**designer** (n) [dɪ'zainə] дизайнер  
**desk** (n) [desk] парт  
**destination** (n) [destɪ'neɪʃn] цель (*путешествия,*  
*поездки*)  
**destroy** (v) [dɪ'strɔɪ] разрушать  
**develop** (v) [dɪ'veləp] развиваться, расти  
**die** (v) [daɪ] умирать  
**different** (adj) ['dɪfrənt] 1) другой, отличный;  
2) разный  
**difficult** (adj) ['dɪfɪklt] трудный, сложный; тяжёлый  
**dinosaur** (n) ['daɪnəsɔ:] динозавр  
**direct** (v) [daɪ'rekt] управлять  
**direction** (n) [daɪ'rekʃn] направление  
**directly** (adv) [daɪ'rektlɪ] прямо  
**director** (n) [daɪ'rektə] руководитель, начальник  
**directory** (n) [daɪ'rektəri] справочник  
**disappear** (v) [dɪsə'pɪə] исчезнуть (*перестать*  
*существовать*)  
**disaster** (n) [dɪ'zɑ:stə] беда, бедствие, несчастье  
**dish** (n) [dɪʃ] блюдо, кушанье  
**distant relative** (n) [dɪ'stənt 'relatɪv] дальний  
родственник  
**do** (v) [du:] 1. 1) выполнять, делать; 2) заниматься  
(*какой-либо деятельностью или делом*)  
2. (*вспомогательный глагол*)  
**doctor** (n) ['dɒktə] доктор, врач  
**dog** (n) [dɒg] собака  
**dolphin** (n) ['dɒlfɪn] дельфин  
**dominant** (adj) ['dɒmɪnənt] доминирующий,  
преобладающий  
**download** (v) [daʊn'ləʊd] скачивать  
**dragon** (n) ['dræɡən] дракон  
**drama** (n) ['drɑ:mə] драматическое искусство  
(*учебный предмет*)  
**draw** (v) [drɔ:] рисовать; чертить  
**dress** (n) [dres] платье  
**drive** (v) [draɪv] водить, управлять (*автомобилем*)  
**drum** (n) [drʌm] барабан  
**dry** (adj) [draɪ] 1) сухой; 2) засушливый  
**during** (prep) ['djʊərɪŋ] во время

## Ee

**eagle** (n) ['i:gl] орёл  
**ear** (n) [ɪə] ухо  
**early** ['ɜ:li] 1. (adj) древний; 2. (adv) рано;  
заблаговременно  
**Easter** (n) ['i:stə] Пасха (*праздник*)  
**easy** (adj) ['i:zi] лёгкий, нетрудный

eat (v) [i:t] есть, кушать  
education (n) [ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃn] образование  
effect (n) [ɪˈfekt] эффект  
egg (n) [eg] яйцо  
Egyptian (adj) [ɪˈdʒɪptjən] египетский  
eight (number) [eɪt] восемь  
elephant (n) [ˈelɪfənt] слон  
email address (n) [ˈiːmeɪl əˈdres] адрес электронной почты  
emu (n) [ˈiːmjʊː] эму  
enclosure (n) [ɪnˈkləʊʒə] загон  
endangered (adj) [ɪnˈdeɪndʒəd] находящийся под угрозой исчезновения  
enemy (n) [ˈenəmi] враг  
English [ˈɪŋɡlɪʃ] 1. (adj) английский;  
2. (n) английский язык  
England (n) [ˈɪŋɡlənd] Англия  
enjoy (v) [ɪnˈdʒɔɪ] получать удовольствие (от чего-л.); наслаждаться  
enormous (adj) [ɪˈnɔːməs] огромный; чудовищный  
equipment (n) [ɪˈkwɪpmənt] снаряжение  
European (adj) [ˌjʊərəˈpiːən] европейский  
event (n) [ɪˈvent] 1) событие; 2) мероприятие;  
3) соревнование  
every (deter) [ˈevri] каждый  
everyone (pron) [ˈevri,wʌn] каждый, всякий человек  
evidence (n) [ˈeɪvɪdəns] доказательство, подтверждение  
evil (adj) [ˈiːvl] злой  
exam (n) [ɪgˈzæm] экзамен  
exception (n) [ɪkˈsepʃn] исключение  
exchange student (n) [ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ ,stjuːd(ə)nt] студент, приехавший по обмену  
excited (adj) [ɪkˈsaɪtɪd] взволнованный  
exciting (adj) [ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ] волнующий; захватывающий  
exercise (n) [ˈeksəsaɪz] 1) упражнение, задание;  
2) тренировка  
exhibition (n) [ˌeksɪˈbɪʃn] выставка  
exist (v) [ɪgˈzɪst] существовать  
exit (n) [ˈeksɪt] выход  
experience (n) [ɪkˈspɪəriəns] 1) (жизненный) опыт;  
2) впечатление, переживание  
expert (n) [ˈeksɜːt] эксперт; специалист  
explain (v) [ɪkˈspleɪn] объяснять  
explore (v) [ɪkˈsploː] исследовать, изучать  
explorer (n) [ɪkˈsploːrə] исследователь  
explosion (n) [ɪkˈspləʊʒn] взрыв  
extinction (n) [ɪkˈstɪŋkʃn] вымирание (вида животных)  
extra [ˈekstrə] 1. (adj) добавочный, дополнительный; 2. (n) 1) статист; 2) доплата  
eye (n) [aɪ] глаз

## Ff

facilities (n pl) [fəˈsɪlɪtɪz] объекты; сооружения  
fair (adj) [feə] светлый, белокурый  
family (n) [ˈfæmli] семья  
famous (adj) [ˈfeɪməs] известный

fan (n) [fæn] болельщик, фанат  
fantastic (adj) [fænˈtæstɪk] фантастический, превосходный, классный  
far [faː] 1. (adj) далёкий, дальний; 2. (adv) далеко  
Far Eastern (adj) [ˌfaː ˈiːstən] дальневосточный  
farm (n) [fɑːm] ферма  
farm animal (n) [ˈfɑːm ,ænɪml] сельскохозяйственное животное  
favourite (adj) [ˈfeɪvərɪt] любимый  
fear (n) [fɪə] страх  
feather (n) [ˈfeðə] перо (у птиц)  
feature [ˈfi:tʃə] 1. (n) характерная черта;  
2. (v) содержать в себе отличительный, особенный элемент  
February (n) [ˈfebruəri] февраль  
feed (v) [fi:d] кормить  
feeling (n) [ˈfiːlɪŋ] чувство  
festival (n) [ˈfestɪvl] фестиваль  
fictional (adj) [ˈfɪkʃnəl] вымышленный  
fight (v) [faɪt] сражаться, воевать  
finally (adv) [ˈfaɪnəli] 1) в заключение; 2) в конце концов  
finger (n) [ˈfɪŋɡə] палец  
finish (v) [ˈfɪnɪʃ] заканчивать(ся)  
fire (n) [faɪə] огонь  
first (deter) [fɜːst] первый  
first name (n) [ˈfɜːst ,neɪm] имя (в отличие от фамилии)  
fish (n) [fɪʃ] рыба  
fish and chips (n) [ˌfɪʃ ən ˈtʃɪps] рыба с жареным картофелем  
five (number) [faɪv] пять  
flag (n) [flæg] флаг  
flea (n) [fliː] блоха  
flower (n) [ˈflaʊə] цветок  
flute (n) [flu:t] флейта  
fly (v) [flaɪ] летать  
foggy (adj) [ˈfɒɡi] туманный  
food (n) [fuːd] еда, пища  
football match (n) [ˈfʊtbɔːl mætʃ] футбольный матч  
foreign language (n) [ˌfɔːrɪn ˈlæŋɡwɪdʒ] иностранный язык  
forest (n) [ˈfɒrɪst] лес  
forget (v) [fəˈget] забывать (о чём-л.)  
fossil (n) [ˈfɒsl] окаменелость  
four (number) [fɔː] четыре  
France (n) [frɑːns] Франция  
free time (n) [ˌfriː ˈtaɪm] личное время  
French [frentʃ] 1. (adj) французский;  
2. (n) французский язык  
fresh (adj) [freʃ] свежий  
friend (n) [frend] друг; подруга  
friendly (adj) [ˈfrendli] дружелюбный  
frog (n) [frɒɡ] лягушка  
from (prep) [frɒm] из, от  
(in) front of (prep) [(ɪn) ˈfrʌnt əv] перед  
fruit (n) [fru:t] фрукты  
fun (n) [fʌn] веселье, забава  
future (adj) [ˈfjuːtʃə] будущий

## Gg

**Gaelic** (n) ['geɪlɪk] гэльский (гаэльский) язык  
**gallery** (n) ['gæləri] галерея  
**game** (n) [geɪm] игра  
**games designer** (n) ['geɪms dɪˌzɑɪnə] разработчик компьютерных игр  
**games tester** (n) ['geɪms ˌtestə] лицо, проводящее тестирование компьютерных игр  
**garden** (n) ['gɑːdn] сад  
**gate** (n) [geɪt] ворота  
**geography** (n) [dʒiː'ɒɡrəfi] география  
**German** (n) ['dʒɜːmən] немецкий язык  
**get dressed** [ˌget 'drest] одеться  
**get up** (phr v) [ˌget 'ʌp] подниматься, вставать (после сна)  
**girlfriend** (n) ['gɜːlˌfreɪnd] любимая девушка  
**glasses** (n pl) ['glɑːsɪz] очки  
**glider** (n) ['glɑɪdə] лётяга  
**global warming** (n) [ˌɡləʊbl 'wɔːmɪŋ] глобальное потепление  
**glove** (n) [ɡlʌv] перчатка  
**go to bed** [ˌɡəʊ tə 'bed] лечь спать  
**god** (n) [ɡɒd] бог, божество  
**goddess** (n) ['ɡɒdes] богиня  
**gold** (n) [ɡəʊld] золото  
**gold medal** (n) [ˌɡəʊld 'medl] золотая медаль  
**golden eagle** (n) [ˌɡəʊldən 'iːɡl] беркут  
**goldfish** (n) ['ɡəʊldfɪʃ] золотая рыбка (аквариумная рыбка)  
**good** (adj) [ɡʊd] хороший  
**(be) good at** [(bi) 'ɡʊd æt] хорошо уметь делать что-л.  
**Good morning!** [ˌɡʊd 'mɔːnɪŋ] Доброе утро!  
**Goodnight!** [ˌɡʊd 'naɪt] Спокойной ночи!  
**gorilla** (n) [ɡə'ri:lə] горилла  
**grammar** (n) ['græmə] грамматика  
**grandad** (n) ['græn,dæd] дедушка  
**granddaughter** (n) ['græn,dɔːtə] внучка  
**grandma** (n) ['græn,mɑː] бабушка  
**grandparents** (n) ['græn,peərənts] дедушка и бабушка  
**grandson** (n) ['græn,sʌn] внук  
**grapes** (n) [ɡreɪps] виноград  
**great** (adj) [ɡreɪt] 1) прекрасный, удивительный, замечательный; 2) великий /That's great! – Прекрасно! Здорово! Вот здорово!/  
**green** (adj) [ɡriːn] зелёный  
**grey** (adj) [ɡreɪ] серый  
**guinea pig** (n) ['ɡɪni piɡ] морская свинка  
**guitar** (n) [ɡɪ'tɑː] гитара  
**guitarist** (n) [ɡɪ'tɑːrɪst] гитарист  
**gymnastics** (n) [dʒɪm'næstɪks] гимнастика

## Hh

**habitat** (n) ['hæbɪtæt] ареал  
**hair** (n) [heə] волосы  
**hamster** (n) ['hæmstə] хомяк  
**hand** (n) [hænd] рука (кисть)  
**happy** (adj) ['hæpi] счастливый, довольный, весёлый

**hare** (n) [heə] заяц  
**harsh** (adj) [hɑːʃ] жёсткий, суровый (о климате)  
**hat** (n) [hæt] шапка, шляпа; головной убор  
**hate** (v) [heit] ненавидеть  
**have breakfast/lunch/dinner** [ˌhæv 'brekfəst/'lʌntʃ/'dɪnə] завтракать/обедать/ужинать  
**head** (n) [hed] голова  
**hear** (v) [hiə] слышать, услышать  
**height** (n) [haɪt] 1) высота; 2) рост  
**helicopter** (n) ['helɪkɒptə] вертолёт  
**Hello!** [hə'ləʊ] Привет!  
**helmet** (n) ['helmɪt] шлем  
**help** (v) [help] помогать  
**Hi!** [haɪ] Здорово! Привет!  
**high** (adj) [haɪ] высокий  
**history** (n) ['hɪstri] история /history museum – исторический музей/  
**holiday** (n) ['hɒlɪdeɪ] отпуск; каникулы  
**home-made** (adj) [ˌhəʊmˈmeɪd] домашнего приготовления  
**honey** (n) ['hʌni] мёд  
**horrible** (adj) ['hɒrəbl] ужасный, жуткий, страшный  
**horror** (n) ['hɒrə] хоррор (жанр литературы и кино, имеющий целью вызвать у читателя и зрителя чувство страха)  
**horse** (n) [hɔːs] конь, лошадь  
**horse-riding** (n) ['hɔːsˌraɪdɪŋ] верховая езда; катание на лошадях  
**hot** (adj) [hɒt] жаркий; горячий  
**hot dog** (n) [hɒt 'dɒɡ] хот-дог  
**hour** (n) [aʊə] час (60 минут)  
**house** (n) [haʊs] дом; здание  
**How?** [hau] Как?  
**How old ...?** [ˌhau 'əʊld] Сколько ... лет?  
**hunter** (n) ['hʌntə] охотник  
**husband** (n) ['hʌzbənd] муж, супруг

## Ii

**ice cream** (n) [aɪs 'kriːm] мороженое  
**ice hockey** (n) ['aɪs ˌhɒki] хоккей (на льду)  
**iceberg** (n) ['aɪsˌbɜːɡ] айсберг

**ICT** (сокр. от information and communication technology) (n) [ˌaɪsɪː'tiː] ИКТ (сокр. от информационно-коммуникационные технологии)

**ill** (adj) [ɪl] больной, нездоровый  
**imaginary** (adj) [ɪ'mædʒɪnəri] воображаемый; нереальный

**important** (adj) [ɪm'pɔːtnt] важный, существенный

**In** (prep) [ɪn] внутри, в, на

**incredible** (adj) [ɪn'kredəbl] неслыханный, невообразимый, потрясающий

**Independence Day** (n) [ˌɪndɪ'pendəns deɪ] День независимости (4 июля – национальный праздник США)

**indoor** (adj) [ˌɪn'dɔː] находящийся или происходящий в помещении

**information** (n) [ˌɪnfə'meɪʃn] информация

**instructions** (n pl) [ɪn'strʌkʃəns] указание, указания

**instructor** (n) [ɪn'straktə] инструктор, тренер  
**instrument** (n) ['ɪnstrʊmənt] музыкальный инструмент  
**interactive** (adj) [ˌɪntər'æktɪv] интерактивный  
**interested** (in) (adj) ['ɪntərəstɪd (ɪn)] интересующийся, увлечённый (чем-л.)  
**interesting** (adj) ['ɪntərəstɪŋ] интересный, занятный, любопытный  
**international** (adj) [ˌɪntə'næʃnl] интернациональный, международный  
**introduce** (v) [ˌɪntrə'dju:s] 1) вводить, открывать; 2) знакомить, представлять  
**invade** (v) [ɪn'veɪd] вторгаться; захватывать  
**invasion** (n) [ɪn'veɪzən] военное вторжение  
**invent** (v) [ɪn'vent] изобретать; создавать  
**invention** (n) [ɪn'venʃn] изобретение  
**inventor** (n) [ɪn'ventə] изобретатель  
**Ireland** (n) ['aɪlənd] Ирландия  
**Irish** ['aɪrɪʃ] 1. (adj) ирландский; 2. (n) ирландский язык  
**island** (n) ['aɪlənd] остров

## Jj

**jacket** (n) ['dʒæktɪt] куртка; пиджак  
**jam** (n) [dʒæm] варенье; джем  
**January** (n) ['dʒænjuəri] январь  
**Japanese** [dʒæpə'ni:z] 1. (adj) японский; 2. (n) 1) японец; японка; 2) японский язык  
**jeans** (n) [dʒi:nz] джинсы  
**job** (n) [dʒɒb] работа  
**joey** (n) ['dʒəʊi] детёныш (обычно кенгуру, ещё живущий в сумке матери)  
**journey** (n) ['dʒɜ:nɪ] 1) путешествие, поездка; 2) рейс, маршрут  
**judo** (n) [dʒu:dəʊ] дзюдо (боевое искусство)  
**juggler** (n) ['dʒʌglə] жонглёр  
**juice** (n) [dʒu:s] сок  
**July** (n) [dʒu'laɪ] июль  
**jump** (v) [dʒʌmp] прыгать, скакать  
**June** (n) [dʒu:n] июнь

## Kk

**kangaroo** (n) [kæŋgə'ru:] кенгуру  
**kayaking** (n) ['kaɪækɪŋ] каякинг (сплав по рекам на каяках, экстремальный вид спорта)  
**keep** (v) [ki:p] иметь, содержать  
**keyboard** (n) ['ki:bɔ:d] клавиатура  
**kill** (v) [kɪl] убивать, лишать жизни  
**kind** [kaɪnd] 1. (adj) добрый; 2. (n) вид, класс  
**king** (n) [kɪŋ] король; царь  
**knife** (n) [naɪf] нож  
**knight** (n) [naɪt] рыцарь  
**know** (v) [nəʊ] знать  
**Kuril (Islands)** [ku'ri:l (aɪləndz)] Курильские острова

## Ll

**lake** (n) [leɪk] озеро  
**land** [lænd] 1. (n) земля, суша; 2. (v) приземляться, совершать посадку

**landscape** (n) ['lændskeɪp] ландшафт; пейзаж  
**language** (n) ['læŋgwɪdʒ] язык; речь  
**larch** (n) [lɑ:tʃ] лиственница  
**Latin American** (adj) [ˌlætɪn ə'merɪkən] латиноамериканский  
**leave** (v) [li:v] 1) уходить, покидать; 2) оставить (после себя); 3) оставлять в каком-л. положении или состоянии  
**leek** (n) [li:k] лук-порей  
**leg** (n) [leg] нога (от бедра до ступни)  
**leopard** (n) ['lepəd] леопард  
**library** (n) ['laɪbrəri] библиотека  
**lifeboat** (n) ['laɪfbəʊt] спасательная шлюпка  
**like** (v) [laɪk] 1) любить, нравиться; 2) хотеть, желать  
**listen** (v) ['lɪsn] слушать /listen to music – слушать музыку; listen to the radio – слушать радио/  
**litter bin** (n) ['lɪtə ,bɪn] урна для мусора  
**live** (v) [lɪv] жить; обитать  
**local** (adj) ['ləʊkl] местный  
**logo** (n) ['ləʊgəʊ] лого, логотип  
**long** [lɒŋ] 1. 1) (adj) длинный; высокий; обладающий определённой протяжённостью; 2) долгий; продолжительный; 2. (n) долгое время, долгий срок  
**look after** (phr v) [ˌlʊk 'ɑ:ftə] заботиться, ухаживать  
**lose** (v) [lu:z] 1) терять (что-л.); лишаться (чего-л. / кого-л.)  
**lots of** (pron) ['lɒts ,əv] много  
**loud** (adj) [laʊd] 1) громкий; 2) шумный  
**loudly** (adv) ['laʊdli] громко  
**love** (v) [lʌv] любить

## Mm

**(be) mad about** [(bi) 'mæd ə,baut] обожать; (быть) без ума (от чего-л.)  
**magazine** (n) [ˌmæɡə'zi:n] (периодический) журнал  
**magic** (adj) ['mædʒɪk] волшебный  
**make** (v) [meɪk] 1) делать, изготавливать; 2) создавать; 3) составлять, образовывать; 4) зарабатывать (деньги)  
**mammal** (n) ['mæmɪl] млекопитающее  
**Mandarin Chinese** (n) [ˌmændərɪn tʃaɪ'ni:z] севернокитайский язык (основная диалектная группа китайского языка)  
**map** (n) [mæp] карта  
**March** (n) [mɑ:tʃ] март  
**market** (n) ['mɑ:kɪt] базар, рынок  
**marmalade** (n) ['mɑ:məleɪd] конфитюр, повидло  
**marry** (v) ['mæri] жениться (на ком-л.); выходить замуж (за кого-л.)  
**marsupial** (n) [mɑ:'su:piəl] сумчатое (животное)  
**maracas** (n) ['mæskət] талисман  
**match** (n) [mætʃ] матч  
**maths** (n) [mæθs] математика  
**May** (n) [meɪ] май  
**meat** (n) [mi:t] мясо  
**medieval** (adj) [medi'i:vɪ] средневековый

meet (v) [mi:t] 1) встречать(ся); 2) познакомиться  
 member (n) ['membə] участник, член (чего-л.)  
 Metallica (n) [mə'tælikə] Металлика (американская метал-группа)  
 Mexican ['meksɪkən] 1. (adj) мексиканский;  
 2. (n) мексиканец; мексиканка  
 Mexico (n) ['meksɪkəʊ] Мексика  
 microphone (n) ['maɪkrəfəʊn] микрофон  
 milkshake (n) ['mɪlk,ʃeɪk] молочный коктейль  
 mineral water (n) ['mɪnrəl,wɔ:tə] минеральная вода  
 mobile number (n) ['məʊbaɪl,nʌmbə] номер мобильного (телефона)  
 mobile phone (n) [məʊbaɪl'fəʊn] мобильный (телефон)  
 model aeroplane/boat (n) [ˌmɒdl'eɪəˌpleɪn/'bəʊt] авиамодель/модель лодки  
 moment (n) ['mɒmənt] минута, момент  
 /at the moment – сейчас, в данный момент/  
 money (n) ['mʌni] деньги  
 monkey (n) ['mʌŋki] обезьяна  
 monument (n) ['mɒnjumənt] монумент; памятник  
 (the) moon (n) [(ðə) mu:n] луна  
 morning (n) ['mɔ:ɪnɪŋ] утро  
 mosquito (n) [mə'ski:təʊ] комар  
 mountain (n) ['maʊntɪn] гора  
 mouth (n) [maʊθ] рот  
 move away (phr v) [ˌmu:v ə'veɪ] отодвигаться, отходить  
 MP3 player (n) [ˌempi:'θri:pleɪə] MP3-плеер  
 multicultural (adj) [ˌmʌlti'kʌltʃrəl] многонациональный  
 multilingual (adj) [ˌmʌlti'liŋgwəl] многоязычный  
 mum (n) [mʌm] мама  
 mummy (n) ['mʌmi] мумия  
 museum (n) [mju:'zi:əm] музей  
 mushroom (n) ['mʌʃru:m] гриб  
 music (n) ['mjuzɪk] музыка  
 musician (n) [mju:'zi:ən] музыкант  
 mystery (n) ['mɪstri] тайна, загадка  
 myth (n) [mɪθ] миф  
 mythology (n) [mɪ'θɒlədʒi] мифология

## Nn

name (n) [neɪm] 1) имя; кличка (животного);  
 2) название, наименование  
 national park (n) [ˌnæʃnəl'pɑ:k] национальный парк  
 nationality (n) [ˌnæʃə'næləti] 1) национальность;  
 2) гражданство  
 Native American (n) [ˌneɪtɪv ə'merɪkən] представитель коренного населения Америки  
 near (prep) [nɪə] около, поблизости, рядом  
 need (v) [ni:d] 1) нуждаться (в чём-л.); иметь  
 надобность, потребность; 2) требоваться, быть  
 необходимым  
 nephew (n) ['nevju:; 'nevju:] племянник  
 never (adv) ['nevə] никогда  
 new (adj) [nju:] новый  
 New Zealand (n) [ˌnju:'zi:lənd] Новая Зеландия

next to (prep) ['nekst,tu:] рядом с  
 nice (adj) [naɪs] хороший, приятный, милый,  
 славный  
 niece (n) [ni:s] племянница  
 nine (number) [naɪn] девять  
 Nobel Prize (n) [ˌnəʊ,bel'praɪz] Нобелевская  
 премия  
 nose (n) [nəʊz] нос  
 notebook (n) ['nəʊtbʊk] тетрадь  
 novel (n) ['nɒvl] роман (литературный жанр)  
 November (n) [ˌnəʊ'vembə] ноябрь  
 nuclear bomb (n) [ˌnju:kliə'bɒm] ядерная бомба

## Oo

obligatory (adj) [ə'blɪgətəri] обязательный  
 October (n) [ˌɒk'təʊbə] октябрь  
 office (n) ['ɒfɪs] офис  
 official (adj) [ə'fɪʃl] официальный  
 often (adv) ['ɒfn] часто, много раз  
 old (adj) [əʊld] 1) старый; 2) старинный  
 Olympic Games (n) [ə,lɪmpɪk'geɪmz] Олимпийские  
 игры  
 on (prep) [ɒn] на; в  
 one (number) [wʌn] один  
 online (adj) [ˌɒn'laɪn] онлайн (осуществляемый  
 через Интернет)  
 online questionnaire (n) [ˌɒnlaɪn kwɛstʃə'neɪ] онлайн-анкета  
 opposite (prep) ['ɒpəzɪt] напротив; с другой  
 стороны  
 orange (adj) ['ɒrɪndʒ] оранжевый  
 orang-utan (n) [ˌɔ:'ræŋətæn] орангутан  
 organisation (n) [ˌɔ:gənəɪ'zeɪʃn] организация  
 original (adj) [ə'ɒrɪdʒnəl] начальный,  
 первоначальный, исходный  
 originally (adv) [ə'ɒrɪdʒnəli] первоначально,  
 изначально; сначала  
 over there [əʊvə 'ðeə] (вон) там  
 owl (n) [aʊl] сова; филин

## Pp

Pacific Ocean (n) [pə'sɪfɪk 'əʊʃn] Тихий океан  
 painter (n) ['peɪntə] художник  
 painting (n) ['peɪntɪŋ] 1) живопись; 2) картина  
 palace (n) ['pæləs] дворец  
 panda (n) ['pændə] панда  
 Paralympics (n) [ˌpærə'lɪmpɪks] Паралимпийские  
 игры  
 paralysed (adj) ['pærəlaɪzd] парализованный  
 parent (n) ['peərənt] родитель  
 park (n) [pɑ:k] парк  
 parrot (n) ['pærət] попугай  
 part (n) [pɑ:t] доля, часть  
 participate (v) [pɑ:'tɪsɪpeɪt] участвовать,  
 принимать участие  
 passenger (n) ['pæsɪndʒə] пассажир  
 patron (n) ['peɪtrən] покровитель, патрон  
 pavement (n) ['peɪvmənt] тротуар  
 PE (сокр. от physical education) (n) [pi:'i:]  
 физическое воспитание

**pen** (n) [pen] ручка  
**pencil** (n) ['pensl] карандаш  
**pencil sharpener** (n) ['pensl ʃɑ:pənə] точилка для карандашей  
**penfriend** (n) ['pen,frend] друг по переписке  
**penguin** (n) ['penɡwɪn] пингвин  
**people** (n) ['pi:pl] 1) нация, народ; 2) люди; население; жители  
**perfect** (adj) ['pɜ:fɪkt] идеальный, совершенный /This is perfect for me. – Мне это нравится/ подходит./  
**person** [(,ɪn) 'pɜ:sn] лично  
**pet** (n) [pet] любимое домашнее животное  
**pharmacy** (n) ['fɑ:məsi] аптека  
**phone number** (n) ['fəʊn ,nʌmbə] номер телефона  
**pink** (adj) [pɪŋk] розовый  
**plant** (n) [plɑ:nt] растение  
**platypus** (n) ['plætipəs] утконос  
**play football/basketball** [,pleɪ 'fʊtbɔ:l/'bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l] играть в футбол/баскетбол  
**Pleased to meet you.** [pli:zd tə 'mi:tju:] Приятно познакомиться.  
**pocket money** (n) ['pɒkɪt ,mʌni] деньги на карманные расходы  
**Poland** (n) ['pəʊlənd] Польша  
**polar bear** (n) [ˌpəʊlə 'beə] белый медведь  
**Polish** ['pəʊlɪʃ] 1. (adj) польский; 2. (n) польский язык  
**politician** (n) [ˌpɒlə'tɪʃn] политик, государственный деятель  
**pollen** (n) ['pɒlən] пыльца  
**pollution** (n) [pə'lu:ʃn] загрязнение (окружающей среды)  
**pop music** (n) ['pɒp ,mju:zɪk] поп-музыка (популярная, общедоступная музыка)  
**pop star** (n) ['pɒp ,stɑ:] поп-звезда (известный исполнитель поп-музыки)  
**popular** (adj) ['pɒpjʊlə] популярный; любимый  
**population** (n) [ˌpɒpjʊ'leɪʃn] (народо)население  
**Portuguese** (n) [ˌpɔ:tʃu'gi:z] 1) португальский язык; 2) португалец; португалка  
**postbox** (n) ['pəʊstbɒks] почтовый ящик  
**postcode** (n) ['pəʊstkaʊd] почтовый индекс  
**potato** (n) [pə'teɪtəʊ] картофель  
**pouch** (n) [paʊtʃ] сумка (у животного)  
**practise** (v) ['præktɪs] практиковать, упражняться; тренироваться  
**prehistoric** (adj) [ˌpri:hi'stɔ:rɪk] доисторический  
**prepare** (v) [prɪ'peə] готовить(ся), подготавливать(ся)  
**presentation ceremony** (n) [prezn'teɪʃn ,serəməni] здесь: церемония открытия  
**press** (v) [pres] жать, нажимать, надавливать  
**primary education** (n) ['praɪməri edʒu,keɪʃn] начальное образование  
**primary school** (n) ['praɪməri ,sku:l] начальная школа  
**private tutor** (n) [ˌpraɪvət 'tju:tə] домашний учитель  
**prize** (n) [praɪz] награда, премия

**problem** (n) ['prɒbləm] проблема  
**procession** (n) [prə'seɪʃn] процессия, шествие  
**prophecy** (n) ['prɒfəsi] предсказание, пророчество  
**protect** (v) [prə'tekt] защищать; охранять  
**province** (n) ['prɒvɪns] провинция (единица административно-территориального деления государства)  
**public** (n) ['pʌblɪk] публика; общественность  
**public baths** (n pl) [ˌpʌblɪk 'bɑ:θs] общественные бани  
**puffin** (n) ['pʌfɪn] тупик (птица)  
**purple** (adj) ['pɜ:pl] фиолетовый  
**pyramid** (n) ['pɪrəmaɪd] пирамида

## Qq

**quadruplet** (n) ['kwɒdrʊplət] один из четырёх близнецов, «четверняшка»  
**queen** (n) [kwi:n] королева  
**question** (n) ['kwɛstʃən] вопрос  
**quick** (adj) [kwɪk] быстрый, скорый  
**quickly** (adv) ['kwɪkli] быстро, скоро  
**quiet** (adj) ['kwaɪət] тихий, бесшумный  
**quietly** (adv) ['kwaɪətli] тихо, бесшумно

## Rr

**rabbit** (n) ['ræbɪt] кролик  
**rain** (v) [reɪn] идти, литься (о дожде)  
**rainforest** (n) ['reɪn,fɔrɪst] тропический лес  
**rainy** (adj) ['reɪni] дождливый  
**raise** (v) [reɪz] собирать (о финансовых средствах)  
**rally** (n) ['ræli] ралли, авторалли  
**rattle** (n) ['rætl] рэтл (ударный музыкальный инструмент)  
**rattlesnake** (n) ['rætl,sneɪk] гремучая змея  
**reaction** (n) [ri:'ækʃən] реакция, реагирование  
**reading** (n) ['ri:dɪŋ] чтение  
**real** (adj) [ri:əl] реальный, реально существующий  
**recommend** (v) [ˌrekə'mend] рекомендовать, советовать  
**red** (adj) [red] красный /red hair – рыжие волосы/  
**region** (n) ['ri:dʒən] регион  
**registration form** (n) [ˌredʒɪ'streɪʃn ,fɔ:m] регистрационная карточка/форма  
**relax** (v) [rɪ'læks] расслабляться; отдыхать; успокаиваться  
**religious** (adj) [rə'lɪdʒəs] религиозный  
**repeat** (v) [ri'pi:t] повторять  
**reptile** (n) ['reptəl] пресмыкающееся, рептилия  
**rescue** (v) ['reskju:] спасать  
**respect** (v) [rɪ'spekt] уважать  
**restaurant** (n) ['restərɒnt; 'restərənt] ресторан  
**rhino** (n) ['raɪnəʊ] носорог  
**ride** (v) [raɪd] ехать (на велосипеде, мотоцикле); ехать верхом  
**right** [raɪt] 1. (adj) правильный, верный; 2. (Interj) да, хорошо, согласен  
**rise** (v) [raɪz] подниматься  
**ritual** (n) ['rɪtʃuəl] обряд, церемония  
**river** (n) ['rɪvə] река

robot (n) ['rəʊbɒt] робот  
rock (n) [rɒk] скала, утёс  
rock band (n) ['rɒk ,bænd] рок-группа  
rock music (n) ['rɒk ,mju:zɪk] рок-музыка  
roller coaster (n) ['rəʊlə ,kəʊstə] американские горки (аттракцион)  
room (n) [ru:m] комната  
round (adj) [raʊnd] круглый  
rugby (n) ['rʌgbɪ] регби  
ruins (n) ['ru:ɪnz] развалины; руины  
run (v) [rʌn] бежать, бегать  
running (n) ['rʌnɪŋ] бег (дисциплина лёгкой атлетики)  
Russia (n) ['rʌʃə] Россия  
Russian ['rʌʃn] 1. (adj) русский; российский;  
2. (n) 1) русский язык; 2) русский, русская; россиянин, россиянка

## Ss

sad (adj) [sæd] грустный, печальный  
safe (adj) [seɪf] безопасный  
safely (adv) ['seɪfli] безопасно  
sail (v) [seɪl] плавать, совершать плавание  
salad (n) ['sæləd] салат  
sandwich (n) ['sændwɪdʒ] сэндвич  
save (v) [seɪv] спасать; охранять, защищать  
school (n) [sku:l] школа  
school uniform (n) [ ,sku:l 'ju:nɪfɔ:m] школьная форма  
science (n) ['saɪəns] наука  
scientist (n) ['saɪəntɪst] учёный  
scorpion (n) ['skɔ:pɪən] скорпион  
Scotland (n) ['skɒtlənd] Шотландия  
Scottish (adj) ['skɒtɪʃ] шотландский /Scottish people – жители Шотландии, шотландцы/  
scream (v) [skri:m] пронзительно кричать, вопить, визжать  
sculptor (n) ['skʌlptə] скульптор  
sculpture (n) ['skʌlptʃə] скульптура  
sea (n) [si:] море  
seal (n) [si:l] тюлень  
season (n) ['si:zn] время года  
second (adj) ['sekənd] второй  
secondary school (n) ['sekəndəri ,sku:l] средняя или основная школа  
section (n) ['sekʃn] секция  
See you! ['si: ju] Увидимся!  
selection (n) [sə'leɪʃn] подбор; набор  
send (v) [send] посылать, отправлять  
September (n) [sep'tembə] сентябрь  
series (n) ['siəri:z] серия (книжная)  
serve (v) [sɜ:v] подавать (о пище)  
seven (number) ['sevn] семь  
sextuplet (n) ['seks'tjuplət] один из шестерых близнецов  
shark (n) [ʃɑ:k] акула  
shark attack (n) ['ʃɑ:k ə,tæk] нападение акулы  
sheep (n) [ʃi:p] овца; баран  
sheepdog trial (n) ['ʃi:pdɒg ,traɪəl] соревнование пастушьих собак  
shine (v) [ʃaɪn] светить, сиять, озарять

ship (n) [ʃɪp] корабль; судно  
shoes (n) [ʃu:z] обувь  
shopping (n) ['ʃɒpɪŋ] посещение магазина с целью покупки /go shopping – ходить за покупками, ходить по магазинам/  
shopping centre (n) ['ʃɒpɪŋ ,sentə] торговый центр  
short (adj) [ʃɔ:t] низкий, невысокий (о человеке); короткий, недлинный  
shorts (n pl) [ʃɔ:ts] шорты  
summer show (n) ['sʌmə ʃəʊ] здесь: летний фестиваль  
shower (n) ['ʃaʊə] душ /have a shower – принимать душ/  
sign (n) [saɪn] знак  
sign up for (phras v) [ ,saɪn 'ʌp fɔ:] записываться на что-л.  
similar (to) (adj) ['sɪmɪlə (tu:)] подобный; похожий, сходный  
sing (v) [sɪŋ] петь  
singer (n) ['sɪŋə] певец, певица  
sister (n) ['sɪstə] сестра  
sister-in-law (n) ['sɪstərɪn,lɔ:] невестка (жена брата); золовка (сестра мужа); свояченица (сестра жены)  
six (number) [sɪks] шесть  
skate (v) [skeɪt] кататься, бегать на коньках  
skiing (n) ['ski:ɪŋ] катание на лыжах; лыжи, лыжные виды спорта  
skill (n) [skɪl] навык; умение; искусство, мастерство  
skirt (n) [skɜ:t] юбка  
sleep (v) [sli:p] засыпать, спать  
slim (adj) [slɪm] стройный  
slow (adj) [sləʊ] медленный  
slowly (adv) ['sləʊli] медленно  
small (adj) [smɔ:l] маленький; небольшой (по размеру)  
snake (n) [sneɪk] змея  
snow leopard (n) ['snəʊ ,lepəd] снежный барс  
snowy (adj) ['snəʊɪ] 1) снежный, со снегом (о погоде); 2) снежный, из снега; 3) заснеженный, покрытый снегом  
social club (n) ['səʊʃl ,klʌb] клуб, в котором люди встречаются для отдыха  
sock (n) [sɒks] носок  
soldier (n) ['səʊldɪə] солдат  
solve (v) [sɒlv] решать, разрешать (проблему и т. п.)  
sometimes (adv) ['sʌmtaɪmz] иногда, время от времени  
son (n) [sʌn] сын  
song (n) [sɒŋ] песня  
soon (adv) [su:n] скоро, вскоре; в ближайшее время  
sound (n) [saʊnd] звук; шум; звук речи  
South Africa (n) [ ,sauθ 'æfrɪkə] Южная Африка  
souvenir (n) [ ,su:və'nɪə] сувенир  
spaceship (n) ['speɪsʃɪp] космический корабль  
Spain (n) [speɪn] Испания

**Spanish** ['spæniʃ] 1. (adj) испанский;  
2. (n) 1) испанский язык; 2) испанец, испанка  
**speak** (v) [spi:k] говорить; сказать; произнести;  
разговаривать  
**speaker** (n) ['spi:kə] 1) говорящий; 2) динамик  
персонального компьютера  
**special** (adj) ['speʃl] 1) особый, особенный,  
специальный; 2) специальный (относящийся  
к отдельной отрасли чего-л.) /nothing special –  
ничего особенного/  
**species** (n) ['spi:ʃi:z] вид (биологический)  
**speed** (n) [spi:d] скорость  
**spell** (v) [spel] писать или произносить (слово)  
по буквам  
**spider** (n) ['spaɪdə] паук  
**sponsored event** (adj) ['spɒnsəd ,ɪvent]  
мероприятие по сбору средств  
**sports hall** (n) ['spɔ:ts hɔ:l] спортзал  
**spring** (n) [sprɪŋ] весна  
**spruce** (n) [spru:s] хвойное дерево  
**spy** (n) [spaɪ] шпион  
**square** (n) [skweə] 1. (adj) квадратный; 2. (n) площадь  
(в городе)  
**stadium** (n) ['steɪdiəm] стадион  
**stall** (n) [stɔ:l] палатка; прилавок  
**stamp** (n) [stæmp] (почтовая) марка  
**star** (n) [sta:] 1) звезда; светило; 2) звезда,  
знаменитость  
**start** (v) [stɑ:t] начинать; браться (за что-л.);  
начинаться  
**station** (n) ['steɪʃn] железнодорожная станция  
**statue** (n) ['stætʃu:] изваяние, статуя  
**stay** (v) [steɪ] останавливаться, жить; оставаться  
**steak** (n) [steɪk] стейк, бифштекс  
**stepbrother** (n) ['step,bɹɪðə] сводный брат  
**stepdad** (n) ['step,dæd] отчим  
**stepmum** (n) ['step,mʌm] мачеха  
**stick insect** (n) ['stɪk ,ɪnsekt] палочник (насекомое)  
**stone circle** (n) [stəʊn 'sɜ:kəl] круг из камней  
**stormy** (adj) ['stɔ:mi] штормовой  
**street** (n) [stri:t] улица  
**student** (n) ['stju:dnt] студент, студентка; учащийся  
**study** (v) ['stʌdi] изучать; заниматься, учиться  
**subject** (n) ['sʌbdʒekt] 1) дисциплина, предмет;  
2) подлежащее  
**suffer** (v) ['sʌfə] страдать  
**sugar** (n) ['ʃʊgə] сахар  
**summer** (n) ['sʌmə] лето  
**summer camp** (n) ['sʌmə ,kæmp] летний лагерь  
**sunbathe** (v) ['sʌnbetɪð] загорать  
**sunglasses** (n pl) ['sʌn,glɑ:sɪz] солнцезащитные  
очки  
**sunny** (adj) ['sʌni] солнечный  
**surface** (n) ['sɜ:fɪs] поверхность  
**surfing** (n) ['sɜ:fɪŋ] сёрфинг  
**surname** (n) ['sɜ:neɪm] фамилия  
**survive** (v) [sə'vaɪv] выживать  
**sweater** (n) ['swetə] свитер, пуловер  
**sweatshirt** (n) ['swetʃɜ:t] толстовка; спортивный  
свитер  
**swim** (v) [swɪm] плавать

**swimming** (n) ['swɪmɪŋ] плавание, купание  
(в водоёме); плавание (спортивная дисциплина)  
**swimming pool** (n) ['swɪmɪŋ pu:l] плавательный  
бассейн  
**sword** (n) [sɔ:d] меч

## Tt

**table tennis** (n) ['teɪbl ,tenɪs] настольный теннис  
**tail** (n) [teɪl] хвост  
**take photos** [teɪk 'fəʊtəʊz] фотографировать,  
снимать  
**take place** [teɪk 'pleɪs] происходить  
**talk** (v) [tɔ:k] говорить, разговаривать, вести  
беседу  
**tall** (adj) [tɔ:l] высокий  
**tarantula** (n) [tə'ræntjʊlə] тарантул  
**tea** (n) [ti:] чай  
**teacher** (n) ['ti:tʃə] учитель, учительница;  
преподаватель, преподавательница  
**team** (n) [ti:m] команда, группа  
**team sport** (n) ['ti:m ,spɔ:t] командные виды  
спорта  
**teenage** (adj) ['ti:n,eɪdʒ] находящийся в возрасте  
подростка  
**teenager** (n) ['ti:n,eɪdʒə] тинейджер, подросток  
**teeth** (n pl) [ti:θ] зубы  
**temple** (n) ['tempəl] храм; церковь  
**ten** (number) [ten] десять  
**tennis** (n) ['tenɪs] теннис  
**tent** (n) [tent] палатка  
**terrible** (adj) ['terəbl] 1) ужасный, отвратительный,  
очень плохой; 2) внушающий страх, ужас  
**Thanks!** [θæŋks] Спасибо!  
**Thanksgiving** (n) ['θæŋks ,gɪvɪŋ] День  
благодарения (государственный праздник  
в США и Канаде)  
**that** (pron) [ðæt] 1) тот, та, то; 2) (тот) который  
**theatre** (n) ['θiətə] театр  
**theme park** (n) ['θi:m pɑ:k] парк отдыха  
с аттракционами  
**these** (pron) [ði:z] эти  
**think** (v) [θɪŋk] думать; размышлять  
**this** (pron) [ðɪs] этот, эта, это  
**those** (pron) [ðəʊz] те  
**thousand** (number) ['θaʊzənd] тысяча  
**three** (number) [θri:] три  
**thriller** (n) ['θrɪlə] триллер  
**tidy your room** [taɪdi jə 'ru:m] убирать свою  
комнату, наводить в комнате порядок  
**tiger** (n) ['taɪgə] тигр  
**toast** (n) [təʊst] тост (поджаренный ломтик  
хлеба)  
**today** (adv) [tə'deɪ] сегодня  
**together** (adv) [tə'geðə] вместе, совместно, сообща  
**toilet** (n) ['tɔɪlət] туалет, уборная  
**tomb** (n) [tu:m] гробница  
**tongue** (n) [tʌŋ] язык  
**top** (n) [tɒp] 1) вершина; 2) верхняя часть  
**total number** (n) ['təʊtl ,nʌmbə] общее число;  
общая численность

**tourism** (n) ['tuərizm] туризм  
**tourist** (n) ['tuərist] путешественник, турист  
**tower** (n) ['taʊə] башня  
**town** (n) [taʊn] город; городок  
**tracksuit** (n) ['træksu:t] спортивный костюм  
**tractor** (n) ['træktə] трактор  
**tradition** (n) [trə'diʃn] традиция; старый обычай  
**traditional** (adj) [trə'diʃnəl] традиционный  
**trainers** (n) ['treɪnəz] кеды, кроссовки  
**trap** (v) [træp] ловить в ловушку, капкан  
**travel** (v) ['trævl] путешествовать  
**treasure** (n) ['trezə] сокровище  
**tree** (n) [tri:] дерево  
**tribe** (n) [traɪb] племя  
**triplet** (n) ['trɪplət] тройняшка, близнец (из тройни)  
**trophy** (n) ['trɒfi] трофей, добыча  
**trousers** (n) ['traʊzəz] брюки  
**try** (v) [traɪ] пытаться; стараться  
**T-shirt** (n) ['ti:ʃz:t] футболка  
**turn into** (phr v) [ˌtɜ:n 'ɪntu:] превращать  
**turn on** (phr v) [ˌtɜ:n 'ɒn] включать  
**turtle** (n) ['tɜ:tl] морская черепаха  
**twin** (n) [twɪn] близнец; двойняшка  
**two** (number) [tu:] два

## Uu

**umbrella** (n) [ʌm'brɛlə] зонт  
**uncle** (n) ['ʌŋkl] дядя  
**under** (prep) ['ʌndə] под  
**unfortunately** (adv) [ʌn'fɔ:tʃnətli] к сожалению  
**unicycle** (n) ['ju:nɪsaɪkl] одноколёсный велосипед  
**(the) United States** (n) [(ðə) ju:naɪtɪd 'steɪts]  
 Соединённые Штаты  
**unusual** (adj) [ʌn'ju:ʒʊəl] необычный, странный  
**USA** (n) [ˌju:es'eɪ] США  
**use** (v) [ju:z] использовать, пользоваться,  
 употреблять  
**user name** (n) [ˌju:zə 'neɪm] имя пользователя,  
 регистрационное имя  
**usually** (adv) ['ju:ʒʊəli] обычно, как правило

## Vv

**vegetable** (n) ['vedʒtəbl] овощ  
**vehicle** (n) ['vi:ɪkl] транспортное средство  
**version** (n) ['vɜ:ʃn] версия; вариант  
**village** (n) ['vɪlɪdʒ] деревня, селение  
**vintage tractor** (n) [ˌvɪntɪdʒ 'træktə] ретротрактор  
**voice** (n) [vɔɪs] голос  
**volcano** (n) [vɒl'keɪnəʊ] вулкан  
**volleyball** (n) ['vɒlibɔ:l] волейбол

## Ww

**Wales** (n) [weɪlz] Уэльс  
**walk** (v) [wɔ:k] идти, ходить (пешком); гулять,  
 прогуливаться  
**wall** (n) [wɔ:l] стена  
**wallaby** (n) ['wɒləbi] валлаби (сумчатое из  
 семейства кенгуровых)  
**war** (n) [wɔ:] война  
**warm** (adj) [wɔ:m] тёплый

**watch TV/a DVD** [ˌwɒtʃ ti:'vi:/ə di:'vi:'di:] смотреть  
 телевизор/фильм на DVD  
**water drum** (n) ['wɔ:tə drʌm] водяной барабан  
 (при изготовлении инструмента плод растения  
 калабас разрезают пополам, очищают от  
 сердцевины и тщательно высушивают;  
 большую из половинок наполняют водой,  
 в которую помещают перевернутую вторую  
 половину)  
**waterfall** (n) ['wɔ:təfɔ:l] водопад  
**wear** (v) [weə] носить (одежду и т. п.)  
**website** (n) ['websaɪt] веб-сайт, интернет-сайт  
**weird** (adj) [wiəd] странный, чудной  
**well** [wel] 1. (adv) хорошо; 2. (interj) ну, итак  
**Welsh** [welʃ] 1. (adj) валлийский, уэльский;  
 2. (n) валлийский язык /Welsh people – жители  
 Уэльса, валлийцы/  
**wet** (adj) [wet] мокрый, влажный  
**whale** (n) [weɪl] кит  
**What?** [wɒt] Что?  
**When?** [wen] Когда?  
**Where?** [weə] Где?  
**white** (adj) [waɪt] белый  
**Who?** [hu:] Кто?  
**wife** (n) [waɪf] жена, супруга  
**wildlife** (n) ['waɪldlaɪf] дикая/живая природа  
**win** (v) [wɪn] победить, выиграть  
**windsurfing** (n) ['wɪndzɜ:fɪŋ] виндсёрфинг  
**windy** (adj) ['wɪndi] ветреный  
**wing** (n) [wɪŋ] крыло  
**winner** (n) ['wɪnə] победитель  
**winter** (n) ['wɪntə] зима  
**Winter Olympics** (n) [ˌwɪntə' ə'ɒlɪmpɪks] зимние  
 Олимпийские игры, зимняя Олимпиада  
**winter sport** (n) [ˌwɪntə 'spɔ:t] зимний вид спорта  
**wizard** (n) ['wɪzəd] колдун, чародей  
**wolf** (n) [wʊlf] волк  
**wonderful** (adj) ['wʌndəfl] замечательный,  
 изумительный, удивительный, поразительный  
**work of art** (n) [ˌwɜ:k əv 'ɑ:t] произведение  
 искусства  
**work** (v) [wɜ:k] работать  
**workshop** (n) ['wɜ:kʃɒp] семинар  
**world** (n) [wɜ:ld] мир, свет  
**world war** (n) [ˌwɜ:ld 'wɔ:] мировая война  
**write** (v) [raɪt] писать, записывать  
**write back** (phr v) [ˌraɪt 'bæk] ответить письменно;  
 ответить на письмо  
**writer** (n) ['raɪtə] писатель  
**wrong** (adj) [rɒŋ] неправильный, неверный

## Yy

**yellow** (adj) ['jeləʊ] жёлтый  
**young** (adj) [jʌŋ] молодой, юный  
**youth club** (n) ['ju:θ ,klʌb] молодёжный клуб

## Zz

**zoo** (n) [zu:] зоопарк

## Irregular verbs

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle
be	was / were	been	keep	kept	kept
beat	beat	beaten	know	knew	known
become	became	become	learn	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
begin	began	begun	leave	left	left
break	broke	broken	lose	lost	lost
bring	brought	brought	make	made	made
build	built	built	meet	met	met
buy	bought	bought	pay	paid	paid
catch	caught	caught	put	put	put
choose	chose	chosen	read	read	read
come	came	come	run	ran	run
do	did	done	say	said	said
draw	drew	drawn	see	saw	seen
drink	drank	drunk	sell	sold	sold
drive	drove	driven	send	sent	sent
eat	ate	eaten	sing	sang	sung
fall	fell	fallen	sit	sat	sat
feed	fed	fed	sleep	slept	slept
feel	felt	felt	speak	spoke	spoken
fight	fought	fought	spell	spelt	spelt
find	found	found	spend	spent	spent
fly	flew	flown	steal	stole	stolen
forget	forgot	forgotten	swim	swam	swum
get	got	got	take	took	taken
give	gave	given	teach	taught	taught
go	went	gone	tell	told	told
have	had	had	think	thought	thought
hear	heard	heard	understand	understood	understood
hit	hit	hit	wear	wore	worn
hurt	hurt	hurt	win	won	won
			write	wrote	written



«РУССКОЕ СЛОВО»



MасMILLAN